

THE SOUTH AFRICAN CHURCH

A study of
the religious and cultural impact
of Protestant Christianity
in the Town of Southern Rhodesia

by A. J. Seligson

Dissertation submitted to
the Faculty of Arts of the
University of Witwatersrand
in fulfillment of
the requirements for the
degree of Master of Arts.

January 1971.

I declare that the dissertation herewith
submitted for the degree of Master of Arts
in the University of Wisconsin is entirely
my own work and has not previously been
submitted for a degree in any other univer-
sity.

Signed: *John H. ...*
John H. ...

Madison, Wis., January 30, 1974.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The idea to the present dissertation was born in discussions with Professor John Blacking, as I was beginning to work on the subject "Tswana traditional religion". I am indebted to Professor Blacking for inspiration and advice, particularly during the field-work for this study.

Since Professor Blacking's departure for overseas, Mr. A.A. Dube, Acting Head of the Department of Social Anthropology, has taken over the guidance of this dissertation. Under his generosity, I have been able particularly aware of the danger of "disciplinary bias" in a work of this kind, to be helped to sharpen the issues and to cut away much irrelevant material. I thank Mr. Dube for his patience and sage criticism.

I also want to express my gratitude to all my Tswana informants, without whom I could have been left with my own prejudices. Some of my missionary colleagues have also been helpful through their advice and interest.

All typing of this dissertation I am truly thankful, has been done by my friend, Miss Marie Kaderis and Mrs. Marian Kaderis.

Gratitude goes also to members of the staff of the Bureau of Library and Archives, for assistance with duplicating the dissertation.

First and last, I want to thank my wife, who has continuously encouraged me to carry on with both research and writing. Without her love, patience and inspiration, I could have been completely impossible to fulfil this task.

I give thanks to God for health and strength during the years of this study. It is my hope that also this work will serve the furtherance of God's Kingdom.

C O N T E N T S

<u>INTRODUCTION</u>	i
Forms of field-work	v
Personal statement of purpose	viii
abstract	ix
Map	xi
 1. <u>THE TSEWA AND THEIR ENVIRONMENT</u>	 1
 2. <u>THE SOCIAL WORLD OF THE TSEWA</u>	 2
The political system	2
The importance of the lineage	13
Marriage and family	16
The web of inter-personal ties	22
Some aspects of social life in nine compounds	26
 3. <u>TRADITIONAL TSEWA BELIEFS</u>	 30
The Power of the Sky (Tilo)	32
A richly varied world of spirits	36
Ancestral spirits (<u>tinguluwa</u>)	37
Foreign, possessive and sickness- bringing spirits (<u>mandiki</u>)	42
Spirits-of-revenge (<u>imipfukwa</u>)	48
<u>Vuloyi</u> - the craft of witches	53
 4. <u>INTRODUCTION OF CHRISTIANITY</u>	 58
The historical picture	58
How Christianity was presented	63
Using the Tswana language	64
Teaching	65
Christian villages (<u>mitlala</u>)	67
Hygiene teaching	68
The Bible	69
The doctrine of sanctification	71
Preaching, sacraments and place of worship	73
To conclude	77
 5. <u>WHY DID THEY BECOME CHRISTIANS?</u>	 79
Reasons for wanting to become Christians	81

1. "Wanted to read and write"	82
2. "Prompted by a dream"	83
3. "Attracted by peace and fellow-ship (kurula ni wuhlengeli)"	85
A. Kurula ('peace')	85
B. Wuhlengeli ('fellowship')	87
4. "Prompted by parents"	97
5. "Attracted by Christian singing"	98
6. "Prompted by a certain Bible verse"	99
7. "Was helped at hospital"	100
8. "Attracted by hygiene"	101
 6. <u>THE QUEST FOR LIFE</u>	104
The wutori concept	104
'Sufficient life' sought	106
Tahwa Christian search for life	109
 7. <u>WORSHIP, SACRIFICE AND SACRAMENTS</u>	115
Traditional worship	115
Unity of traditional worship and sacrifice	116
Rites of life crises	117
Memorial rites	119
Rites of the soil	122
Observations regarding Tahwa traditional worship	127
Christian worship	131
Regularity	131
Liturgical order	132
Singing and processing	133
Dedication	135
Prayer in public worship	136
Role of prayer outside of public worship	138
Special occasions of worship	140
Christian memorial services (<u>timisa</u>)	141
Christian agricultural rites	143
Sacraments	144
'Sacrifice' in Christian context	153
Observations on Tahwa Christian worship as compared to traditional	156
 8. <u>THE PURSUIT OF HEALTH</u>	162
Introductory survey	162
Traditional conception of illness	165
What is the nature of sickness?	165

Why does sickness come?	167
By whom has the sickness been sent?	171
Observations concerning traditional concepts of illness	174
The role of diviners and curers	177
The <u>n'anga</u>	177
Herbalists	179
Traditional cures	179
Prophylactic measures	180
Restoration of broken relationships with spirits	181
Confession	182
Dealing with witchcraft	187
Purification rites	188
Medicines	189
Changes wrought through Christian and other outside influences	190
Hospitals and hygiene	190
Present attitude to sickness	191
Spiritual situation still vital	194
Christian attitude to cures	199
Analysis of the relation "Hospitals or <u>n'anga</u> "?	202
Conclusions	207
 9. <u>LAW, SIN AND SALVATION</u>	 209
Good and evil	210
Good produces 'life'	210
Good is normal	212
Evil influences from the outside ("externalization")	213
Sore symbols for 'good' and 'evil'	214
Christian ethics introduces conflict	216
Externalization in Christian context	218
Law and legalism	219
The nature of law	219
The Law of Christ	221
Legalistic outlook analyzed	222
Sin, punishment and restitution	224
Sin against whom?	225
Old sins and new	229
Sins have consequences	231
Reconciliation urgently needed	234
Social or religious salvation?	239

10. <u>DEATH AND LIFE ETERNAL</u>	242
The nature of death	243
The burial	244
Removing the death contamination	247
A Christian funeral	249
Christians and death	250
Christian influence on non-Christian attitudes	255
Ancestral spirits and Christian Faith	257
What has 'Eternal life' in store?	260
Heaven and the <u>tinguluve</u>	264
Fear of hell is a weak factor	265
Eschatology in a cyclical context	267
11. <u>TOWARDS SOME CONCLUSIONS: ADDITION OR DISPLACEMENT?</u>	269
<u>BIBLIOGRAPHY</u>	280

INTRODUCTION

Christianity, introduced into Africa simultaneously with white civilisation, came with the pronounced purpose of "lifting the African out of the darkness of heathenism". At that time - approximately 100 years ago - Africans were assumed to have no culture of their own. Undoubtedly, many non-Africans still cling to this belief. There were even doubts as to whether Africans had any religion at all, beyond purely magical superstitions. Christianity, therefore, came to replace heathenism, or, maybe even to fill a cultural and religious vacuum.

During a century of mission activity in Africa, Christian Churches have been organized all over the continent, and in many instances they are now entirely under African leadership. Nevertheless, it seems as though 'heathenism' is still a strong force, as witchcraft beliefs are said to be on the increase, and ancestral spirits are being approached also by Christians. (1) It was, perhaps naively, believed in Church circles that customs and beliefs which had been consciously repudiated by a person would no longer play any important part in his thinking. After the acceptance of the Christian teaching that, e.g. ancestors are not to be approached by prayer and sacrifice, it was surmised that the Christian would no longer pay any attention to his dead forebears. In this connection, it is important to listen to Malinowski's statement:

"Every nominal Christian child learns a great deal about the influence which the ancestral ghosts exercise and the cult by which they can be propitiated. Under the stress of emotional crisis, the indigenous belief becomes stronger than the alien creed". (2)

(1) Cf. H.G. Williamson, Akan Religion and Christian Faith, pp. 145 and 167

(2) B. Malinowski, in Methods of Study of Culture Contact in Africa, p. xxix

During the last decade, many important studies were made into the field of contact between African culture and the Christian faith, both from anthropological, sociological and political angles. Investigations made by, for instance, Vilakazi among the Nguni, and Meyer among the Tswana people of South Africa, ⁽³⁾ clearly show the great impact Christianity had made upon respective peoples, but demonstrate also the evident discrepancy between professed beliefs and actual standards. Meyer's work established the distinction between 'tribal people', exemplified by the 'tribe' Tswana, and the Christians, called 'civilised people', frequently indicating that the 'tribal' people are at an impasse against their own culture to have any dealings with the Christian Church.

One must, and others, attempt to show that such 'results', at present arriving in Africa, emerge from the Christian faith. ⁽⁴⁾ Margaret Field, with her insight into anthropology and psychology, stresses the growing influence of traditional religions, as the cause of the failure of the Christian Church. ⁽⁵⁾ From an African theological viewpoint, Adeniji divides Africa for the Church in Africa, if it does not immediately change its attitude towards the inheritance of African culture. ⁽⁶⁾ J. Mbiti speaks with conviction of the shallowness of 'Mistaken Christianity'. ⁽⁷⁾ Against such a background, Barrett's judgement of an earthquake-like spread and growth of the Christian Church in Africa until the end of this century appears both unrealistic and - frightening. ⁽⁸⁾

(3) A. Vilakazi, Cultural Transformations; P. Meyer, Christianity in Southern Africa.

(4) S. Dube, (ed.), Christianity in Africa as seen by Africans.

(5) M. Field, Search for Security, pp. 10-11, 118.

(6) E.A. Adeniji, 'The Christian Church and African Heritage', in S. Dube (ed.), Christianity in Africa as seen by Africans.

(7) J. Mbiti, African Religions and Philosophy, p. 223.

The present study is an attempt to go beyond 'official' Christianity, trying to dig below outer appearances and pious attitudes, possibly to find some of the fundamental causes of conflict which seems to be inevitable as Christianity meets Africa; or, in other words, to discover whether or not Christianity, as it is now being presented, meets the deeper needs of the African.

It might be utterly presumptuous to apply this small investigation to 'the African', as it deals only with a small slice of Africa's population, if it were not for the fact that the problem of the Church seems to be much alike all over the continent. However, knowing the limitations of my research, I do not pretend to do more than indicate a few facts, as found among the Tswana people of Bechuanaland, as possible points of departure for a discussion which I feel is already much overdue.

I have, therefore, attempted to make this investigation as natural, and to some extent a conceptual, one, trying more to find out what people feel and believe than what they actually do when going to church. Several structural aspects of culture and religion have been left out, although a certain structural framework is necessary, in order to understand thoughts and beliefs.

The main thrust of this study is a continuous comparison between traditional Tswana beliefs and attitudes with those found within the Tswana Christian community, with the object of establishing the character of and reasons behind misunderstandings, open conflicts, and syncretistic developments.

Two limitations of this dissertation should be pointed out:

1. It deals exclusively with the Tswana people within the

(2) H.A. Garrett, "AD 2000: 500 million Christians in Africa" in International Review of Missions, Vol. 59, Jan. 1970, pp. 59-64

European context. In a Roman Catholic-dominated country like Botsuana, this may seem strange, but it was necessary to make this limitation for practical reasons. From my personal experience of work among the Tswana people, it appears that opinion within the Roman Catholic sphere may present differences with different segments, and possibly warrant a separate investigation.

2. The main field-work, on which this dissertation is based, was with young Tswana men working in the Transvaal gold and coal mines. This fact may seem unduly narrowing, as much a field-work people might expect a very specialized type of material, with all informants being men in a specific, rather artificial life situation. I do not hesitate to state, however, that this limitation is much less important than may appear at first sight. Although, for practical reasons, such men supplied most basic information, it should be noted that:

a) they are in a situation of limbo to be regarded as articulated or as repressed mine workers. As will be shown later, ⁽¹⁾ they are even exposed to a kind of 'involuntary incorporation', leaving them well within the tribal sphere during their periodic periods of absence. In spite of their temporary absence, they remain in a great sense part of their home community.

b) Furthermore, I would recall my 20 years of missionary work among the Tswana as an asset, somewhat balancing the potential liability of men informants being mine workers. Through my knowledge of the Tswana language and continued interest in their traditional customs and beliefs, I have during frequent visits to compounds, been able to check and recheck statements and attitudes, as well as questions raised by the information.

c) Three of the 20 main informants were interviewed in their home country.

At present, some Tswana are living in some of the cities

(1) See "The Social World of the Tswana", p. 27

of knowledge, and possibly to support by the people.

The ages of the informants were divided as follows:
Four in the group between 18 and 24 years. The oldest
30 and 31. Nine in the group between 25 and 34 and the
informant claimed to be 35 years of age. Three of these
informants had grown to be non-Christian because they
had been influenced by Christianity through one of the
parents. At the time of the interview, all of them were
practising Christians.

The informants were partly selected on basis of the
people of wide geographical distribution. The informants
belonged to the following regions:

Villavieja	
Martinez	
Pacheco	
Barro Colorado	
Cochino	
Herrera	
Nazari	
Pinto	

Only one of the informants was a non-Christian, while three were ministers of the Methodist Episcopal Church with their six-years' pastoral training based on primary education. Two of the remainder, only three had gone to primary school, one of whom had also taken training in agriculture. The other 11 had no formal education. Two were self-taught because of literacy programs within the Church, others who had never taken the steps of education in the primary school.

Selected from 20 informants, several others were selected in Hospital, including a few women who were also informants. The informants were selected on basis of their geographical distribution. By frequent, various visits to various areas through the years, the informants were selected on basis of their geographical distribution, and for giving opportunities to give a different perspective into proper perspective.

Without revealing the identity of the informants, the results of the study are reported in the following manner:

people, who opened their hearts and minds to a much greater
extent than I had ever imagined - even to the point of some-
times painful self-revelation. Their spontaneous spirit of
cooperation made very little questioning necessary on my
part. As I said, in return, I was scrupulous in giving
all information voluntarily given.

Personal statement of purpose

As I am personally convinced that the Christian Faith has a tremendous value in store for anyone who approached it in spiritual humility and intellectual openness, I am a missionary in Africa with the avowed purpose of helping Africans explore the full wealth of Christianity. It follows, therefore, that I regard the Christian Church both as a divine institution and an association of human beings.

In this investigation, however, I have attempted to divest myself as much as possible of my missionary bias. In an honest effort to approach the actual problems from an anthropological point of view, presenting the facts as found, without passing my value judgments on either side. In every attempt at explanation of various phenomena, it has been my purpose to raise questions rather than to give final answers or recommendations.

Abstract

The purpose of this study is to (a) establish such data of Tshwa traditional culture and beliefs as may be a living part of a Tshwa person's mind, and (b) investigate how the message of Protestant Christianity has been received into such a frame of reference. Right through the dissertation, I continuously compare our findings and suggestions with results of similar investigations in other parts of Africa.

As very little has been published about Tshwa traditional culture, I begin with a survey of the social structure of Tshwa society, indicating some friction because of outside influence. This is followed by a summary of Tshwa traditional beliefs.

The Protestant influence on the Tshwa is then presented from a historical viewpoint, and the initial response to this presentation is sought in an investigation of my informants' stated reasons for "wanting to become Christian".

An attempt to crystallize the "highest good" for the Tshwa is made in the chapter on "quest for life". It is suggested that 'sufficient life' is the Tshwa ideal which gives guidance and inspiration for action both within traditional and Christian context. It is observed, however, that certain trends gradually change this ideal in the modern setting particularly for Christians. This chapter introduces the main body of the dissertation, in which I investigate in several different spheres how the 'search for life' in the traditional meaning and the new Christian ideal of "the better life" interpenetrate each other, even within the same person.

The 'quest for life' is then followed through the area of worship, and it is found that, while 'life' traditionally is sought mainly in worship, this is only partly true in the Christian context. We continue this investigation in the field of sickness and health and observe that modern hospital treatment may leave the Tshwa frustrated spiritually and mentally even as it helps them physically. In the fields of

morals, it is found that Christian ethics introduced conflicts, as Tahwa people traditionally seek 'life' partly through right relationships within the group, while Protestantism insists on a break of such relationships as may be deemed harmful. It is also found that the contrasts in value conception potentially plunge Tahwa into inner conflicts, when trying to apply Christian ethics.

The final sphere to be investigated is death and accompanying attitudes, and we soon find that this area is more definitively marked by Christian influence than other parts of Tahwa life. In spite of a regular Protestant rejection of beliefs in ancestral spirits, it is probable that Christian teaching on 'eternal life' has strongly contributed to this remarkable change.

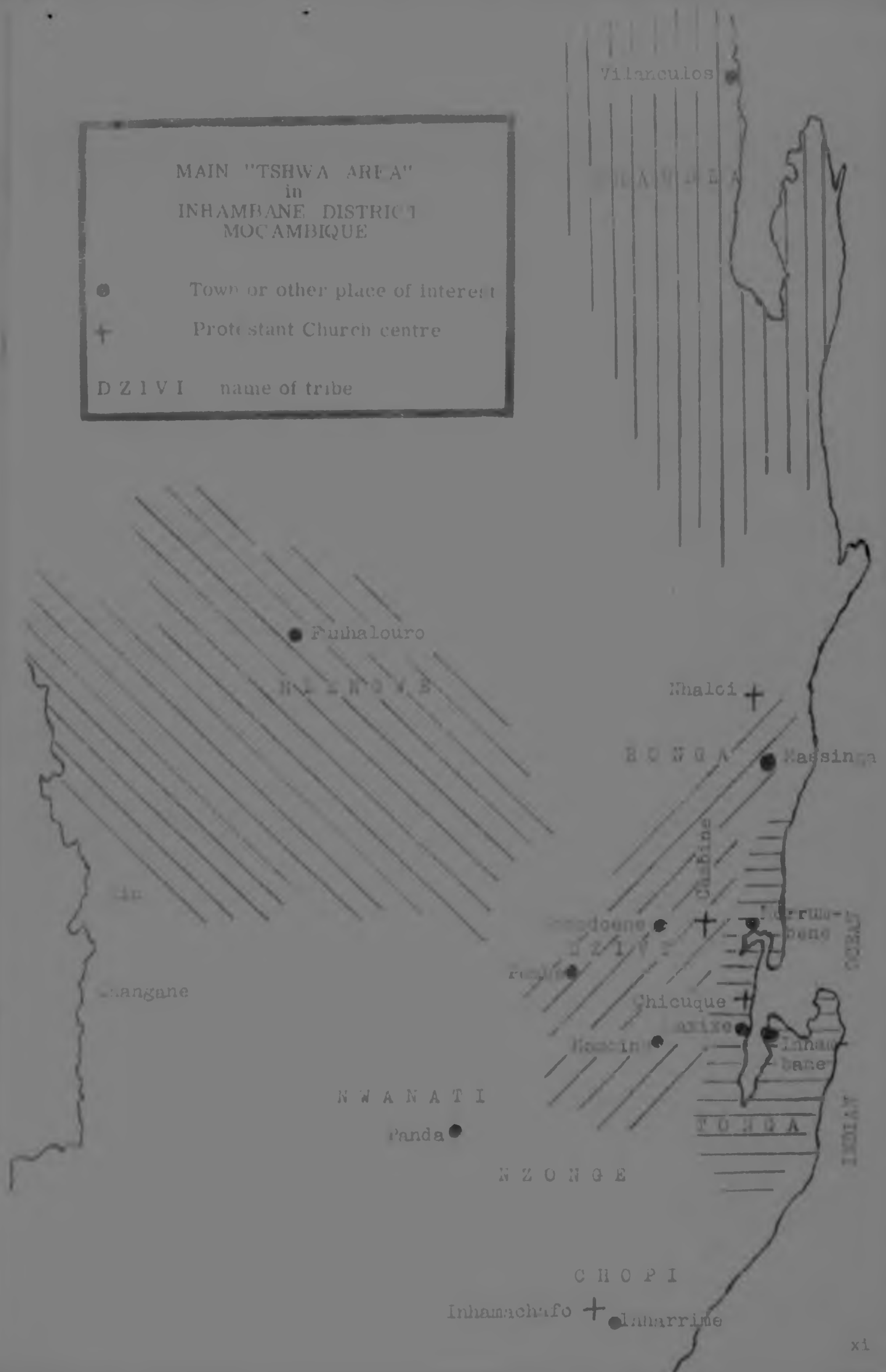
In a final chapter, I summarize some of the findings and draw certain conclusions.

MAIN "TSHWA AREA"
in
INHAMBANE DISTRICT
MOÇAMBIQUE

● Town or other place of interest

+ Protestant Church centre

D Z I V I name of tribe



1. THE TSHWA AND THEIR ENVIRONMENT

The Tshwa are a tribal group in Moçambique, occupying roughly the country between the two rivers Limpopo and Save - apart from European settlements, - with the important exception of the coastal stretch from Limpopo to Morrumbene, where the Chopi and Tonga tribes are settled. (See map). The majority of the Tshwa are concentrated between the Indian Ocean and the Changane river, i.e. within the administrative district of Inhambane, with population density increasing towards the coast. The region bordering on Rhodesia is only sparsely populated. (1)

Among themselves, the Tshwa distinguish three large groups, which I will refer to as tribes: The Dzivi, Hlengwe and Mhandla. First on the present scene were the Hlengwe, according to their own traditions coming from the Zimbabwe region to settle in what is now the Western part of the Tshwa area, probably towards the end of the 15th century. The Mhandla originated as a branch lineage (nyangwa = "gate") of the Hlengwe, which later settled around present Homoine. (2)

During the first half of the 17th century, the Dzivi moved to this same region from settlements either in present Eastern Transvaal, or Swaziland. (3) They started out by paying tribute to the chief of the Mhandla, but a Dzivi revolt resulted in the Mhandla being driven northwards, finally settling in the present Vilanculos region. Subsequently, the Dzivi chiefs became recognized as overlords both by Hlengwe and Mhandla. Gradually they confirmed their new sta-

(1) Atlas de Moçambique, p. 24

(2) E. Mucambe, Matimu ya VaTshwa, p. 5

(3) A. Mucombo, Mulaveteli wa ntumbuluko wa VaTshwa, p. 44

tus by the strategic location of new Dzivi settlements, forming a buffer zone between the Mhandla in the North and their own capital at Homoine. (4)

Two smaller groups should also be mentioned as belonging to the Tshwa, although they will play no specific part in this dissertation: The Nwanati, also called Makwakwa, traditionally placed South of the Hlengwe; and the Nlonge (Gwambe) in their traditional homeland between the Dzivi and the Chopi. (5)

How this group of different tribes came to be known as Tshwa, and how the Tshwa language was formed can at present be only matters of conjecture. The fact remains that, through history, these groups became united to such an extent that present members identify themselves as Tshwa first of all.

It is obvious that these tribes are more connected through their present common language, Tshwa, (6) than by any wide claims to common ancestry. Dialects can be distinguished, according to the groups mentioned, probably pointing to the explanation that several smaller languages merged into one through the influence of the ruling Dzivi.

According to Doke's classification, Tshwa is one of the three languages within the so-called "Shangana-Tsonga" group. The two others are Ronga, spoken around Lourenço Marques, and Tsonga which is predominant in the region South of the Limpopo

(4) A. Mucombo, op. cit., pp. 45 - 46

(5) Cf. C.E. Fuller, "Ethnohistory in the study of culture change in Southeast Africa" in Bascom-Herskovitz, (ed), Continuity and Change in African cultures, p. 111

(6) The language is distinguished from the people by the prefix "xi-", while the people are designated by personal prefixes "mu-" in sing., "va-" in plural. Thus: Xitshwa = the language Tshwa; Mutshwa (plur. Vatshwa) = a Tshwa person

river to within 50 miles North of Lourenço Marques. (7)

Thus, the Tshwa-speaking people are seen as part of the great "Thonga" tribe, (8) amply described in the Junod studies from the beginning of this century. However, in spite of the relationship between the mentioned languages and several similarities in customs, I maintain that Tshwa culture is so distinct from the "Thonga" that it warrants a far better treatment than being summarily dismissed as "the Northern clans". (9) Evidence points to stronger similarities with Karanga, Venda and Ndaou than are found among the "Thonga".

It has been estimated that there are approximately 600,000 Tshwa in the area mentioned. The Chopi and Tonga groups are considerably smaller, not reaching a combined figure of 100,000, although many Chopi and Tonga are found living among the Tshwa, more or less assimilated into their culture. A numerically insignificant tribe is called Ronga, now living West of Massinga, in the midst of 'Tshwa territory'. As they have a language of their own, although only partly used, and distinguish themselves through certain cultural

(7) D.T. Tole, "Doke's classification of Bantu languages", in African Studies. Vol. 18, pp. 197-213

(8) For clarification, the following list is given:
Thonga - in anthropological circles commonly used joint designation of the Ronga, Tsonga and Tshwa peoples in S. Mozambique, purportedly introduced by Nguni rulers (N. Mbanze, "Ngango wa Mutshwa", p. 1)
Tsonga - tribal group living mainly South of Limpopo river in Mozambique, as well as in North-eastern Transvaal; often called "Shangnan".
Tonga - tribe located around town of Inhambane in Mozambique and along coast towards Vilanculos; mainly fishermen and traders; language quite distinct from "Shangana-Tsonga" group; also called "Koka".

(9) See e.g. H.A. Junod, Life of a South African Tribe. I, p. 269

river to within 50 miles North of Lourenço Marques. (7)
 Thus, the Tshwa-speaking people are seen as part of the great
 "Thonga" tribe, (8) amply described in the Junod studies from
 the beginning of this century. However, in spite of the re-
 lationship between the mentioned languages and several simi-
 larities in customs, I maintain that Tshwa culture is so
 distinct from the "Thonga" that it warrants a far better
 treatment than being summarily dismissed as "the Northern
 clans". (9) Evidence points to stronger similarities with
 Karanga, Venda and Ndaou than are found among the "Thonga".

It has been estimated that there are approximately
 600,000 Tshwa in the area mentioned. The Chopi and Tonga
 groups are considerably smaller, not reaching a combined fi-
 gure of 100,000, although many Chopi and Tonga are found liv-
 ing among the Tshwa, more or less assimilated into their
 culture. A numerically insignificant tribe is called Ronga,
 now living West of Massinga, in the midst of 'Tshwa territory'.
 As they have a language of their own, although only partly
 used, and distinguish themselves through certain cultural

(7) D.T. Cole, "Doke's classification of Bantu languages",
 in African Studies, Vol. 18, pp. 197-213

(8) For clarification, the following list is given:
Thonga = in anthropological circles commonly used
 joint designation of the Ronga, Tsonga and Tshwa
 peoples in S. Moçambique, purportedly introduced
 by Nguni rulers (N. Mbanze, "Ngango wa Mutshwa",
 p. 1)
Tsonga = tribal group living mainly South of Limpopo
 river in Moçambique, as well as in North-eastern
 Transvaal; often called "Shangnan".
Tonga = tribe located around town of Inhambane in
 Moçambique and along coast towards Vilanculos;
 mainly fishermen and traders; language quite distinct
 from "Shangana-Tsonga" group; also called "Koka".

(9) See e.g. H.A. Junod, Life of a South African Tribe,
 I, p. 269

features, they are of great anthropological interest. In spite of this, they seem to have escaped any systematic research, so far. These Ronga are claimed to be the original inhabitants of a large part of the present Dzivi and Mhandla areas, but are now rapidly being integrated into Tshwa culture. In order to distinguish these Ronga from the Ronga people near Lourenço Marques, the former will be called "Massinga-Ronga" wherever they appear in this dissertation.

The Tshwa area forms part of the Portuguese province of Moçambique, with the administrative centre of the region in the town of Inhambane. The Portuguese arrived in the area as early as 1498, about the time when the Hlengwe moved to their present location. For centuries, Portuguese influence in this part of Moçambique was concentrated to certain coastal areas, around Inhambane, Sofala (close to present Beira), and at the mouth of Rio do Espírito Santo, where we now find Lourenço Marques. Their indirect material influence, however, was very important, as they brought along new kinds of grain and other useful plants, e.g. maize, cassava and peanuts, which were eagerly adopted by the indigenous people. (10)

Before 1900, the Tshwa tribes were more directly involved, from a political point of view, with the Nguni rulers, who dominated the interior of Southern Moçambique for the larger part of the 19th century. They were originally Zulu warriors who, under their leader Soshangane, had fled from the dominance of the Zulu king Dingane. (11) There was a time of great upheaval in these parts of the country. Many Ndaupople were transferred southwards from North of the Save River. This was also the time when many Chopi moved into Tshwa country and became assimilated into Tshwa life. (12)

(10) A.F. de Silva e Iona, Dos primeiros trabalhos dos Portugueses no Monomotapa, p. 26

(11) J.D. Omer-Cooper, The Zulu aftermath, pp. 58-60

(12) Ibid., p.661

The variations of rainfall are great. Cattle are raised in seasons, and different years. From 1890, the cattle have been of the driest parts of all Mozambique, extending into the Rhodesian border. (14) The droughts always constitute a potential threat against human habitation and agriculture.

To supplement the income from cattle agriculture, it has become customary for men from the Vainha area to leave their work in the gold and coal mines of South Africa. This migration began during the last few decades of the 19th century when the discovery of diamonds at Kimberley, and gold at Johannesburg spread the rumors that wealth was to be made there. Fairly soon small parties of men began to be organized in Southern Mozambique, and at present more than 50 percent of the active labour force in South Africa is composed of men who originate from the Southern part of Mozambique. The main groups being Tswana, Chopi and Sotho. This implies that about 100,000 men from the area mentioned are continuously absent from their home country, i.e., the labour is constant, and the social and economic changes have been driven by migration to and from the mines. This has played a very important role in the development of the 'Tswana' and in substantial agriculture. (15) This has been a contributing factor, especially during the last half of the century, and the area of work opportunities outside of agriculture is much less than in previous times. The people have been able to support themselves in agriculture.

Cattle play an insignificant role in the lives of the Tswana. There is evidence that the stock of cattle was severely diminished through Ngazal soldiers' raiding, and that cattle were commonly used for the payment of bride-price (nanowolo).

(14) Atlas de Moçambique, p. 22.

(15) A. J. de Almeida, O movimento migratório de trabalhadores entre Moçambique e África do Sul, p. 25.

before their time. (16) At present, cattle are exceptions, but goats, sheep and hens are very common domestic animals. To supplement their meat supply, several Tshwa hunt in the bush, game being considered fairly abundant.

(16) A. Rita-Ferreira, op. cit. pp. 42-43

2. THE SOCIAL WORLD OF THE TSHWA

The political system

In tracing the history of the Tshwa, we find old tales that follow the Hlengwe far back into the time when they were still living in what is now Rhodesia. ⁽¹⁾ Several of their big chiefs (hosi-ya-ngoma = lit. "chief of the drum") ⁽²⁾ are said to have been great warriors, making life miserable for neighbouring tribes. Some time after their moving to the present homeland, ⁽³⁾ the Hlengwe chief Shigomba decided to divide his chiefdom and give the eastern part of it to his son-in-law, Xivilele, who then became the first hosi-ya-ngoma of the Mhandla people. In spite of the Dzivi beginning their time in this area as subjects (valuveli) of this Mhandla chief, they also had their 'chief-of-the drum', Yingwane. After their successful revolt against the Mhandla, Yingwane came to be regarded as the great Tshwa chief, and the chiefs of the other tribes paid tribute to him. This was the beginning of the Dzivi domination. ⁽⁴⁾

Each tribe continued, however, with its own chief-of-the-drum, who ruled over his subjects. And they did not rule only people who claimed to be related to the chief. Different groups had been conquered during the course of history, and these were also counted into respective chiefdoms. We see, therefore, that even long ago it was true also among the Tshwa that...

(1) E.A. Mucambe, Matimba ya Vatshwa, p. 5

(2) Cf. Krige, The Realm of a Rain Queen, p. 127, and Bullock, The Mashona, p. 281, footnote

(3) See map facing p. 1

(4) E.A. Mucambe, op. cit. p. 24, p. 27

"... membership of a tribe is determined... more by allegiance to a chief than by birth, and the unity of the tribe depends fundamentally on the common loyalty of the tribesmen to their chief". (5)

Every chief-of-the-drum had several sub-chiefs, who also functioned as the chief's main counsellors. Thus, at the same time as they were the great chief's servants, they tempered his absolute power through their council. The inferior status of these sub-chiefs - in relation to the chief-of-the-drum - emerges in the term used for their designation. They were called hosi-ya-tala, which actually means "chief-of-the-rubbish-heap". Behind this name we see the importance of the continuous payment of tribute (kuluva), made by all subjects through the hosi-ya-tala. No part of this was, as a rule, taken directly to the chief-of-the-drum, but was brought to the village of the sub-chief, from which selected parts of the tribute were forwarded to his superior.

Every sub-chief, in his turn, had his own counsellors (manghanakana), who were each entrusted with a section of his sub-chieftom and could act as judges in minor matters. It appears that "chiefs-of-the-rubbish-heap" very often were related to the "chief-of-the-drum", either by representing a certain nyangwa ("gate", i.e. branch lineage), (6) or through maternal or affinal kinship, and a manghanakana often had a similar standing in relation to his hosi-ya-tala. The political power was thus prudently supported by kinship bonds, utilizing the superhumanly sanctioned emphasis on unity of the kin-group in keeping the chieftom intact. As these several degrees of chieftainship after establishment all became hereditary, the system obviously promoted a strong conservatism. (7)

(5) W. Hoernle, "Social organization" in I. Schapera, Bantu-speaking tribes of South Africa, p. 69

(6) A.R. Radcliffe-Brown and D. Forde (ed), African systems of kinship and marriage, p. 14

(7) Cf. Krige, op. cit. pp. 173-174;

In spite of a well worked-out system of chieftainship, no remarkably great rulers are known among the Tshwa. They never developed a strong centralized government similar to Monomotapa of the Karanga or the great chiefs of the Zulu.

As in other parts of Africa, a Tshwa chief had the sacred duty of representing his whole tribe before the superhuman Powers. This did not only imply a duty to sacrifice to his own ancestral spirits for rain and fertility of the tribal soil. His own life and health was seen as a symbol of the life of the tribe itself. As Hoebel has expressed it:

"In Africa, again and again, (the chief) symbolizes the tribal soul: a soul that must be hale and vigorous, else the tribe wanes and dies". (8)

This was particularly true concerning the chief-of-the-drum, but with passage of time and increase of population, some of his ritual functions came to be performed by the hosi-va-tala in each section of the chiefdom. Thus, through the chief, all people in his chiefdom expected to find life-power (wutoni) for their land. This traditional concept is still of utmost importance in the life of the Tshwa.

Not surprisingly, this has become one area of continuous conflict since the introduction of Christianity among the Tshwa. My informants agreed that "chieftainship and Christian faith are impossible to combine" (9) and gave several examples of Christian men - even pastors - who had "lapsed back into traditional beliefs" after becoming chiefs. Old female members of the chief's patrilineage (vahahani) were said to put constant pressure on an incumbent who may hesitate about sacrificing to his ancestors: "Do you want to see your land die, and die yourself with it?"

(8) E.A. Hoebel, Man in the primitive world, p. 501

(9) Some informants even regarded chieftainship as a "sin". See p. 229

Another sphere in which modern conflict may be expected is the marital status of the chief. Reports indicate that chiefs of first and second rank are usually polygynous, and some informants indicate that a chief cannot be regarded as "great", if he has only one wife. As Protestant Churches in the area have from the beginning taken a very strong stand against polygyny, this is another reason why traditional chieftainship and Christian faith are difficult to combine.

Probably, a chief's polygyny was formerly encouraged for political reasons by families sending a daughter as wife to the chief, to win political favour. (10) This procedure, however, was unknown to my informants, but, on the other hand, several made it clear that....

".... these days only chiefs can afford having more than one wife, because they get money all the time (through payment of tribute). The best they can do, then, is to use this money for nzhowolo (bridewealth). But for me, working for a salary, my money would get finished if I had to clothe two wives".

It should be noted that, while the chief represented all his people in his prayers for fertility, each lineage within his chieftaindom carried on with its own rites addressed to its own ancestors. "The Great-one-of-the-lineage" (Wahombe wa lixaka) was usually the leader in such undertakings. His leadership had no territorial significance. He personified the whole lineage and asked for life and health for his group, wherever its members may reside, especially in times of crisis.

The division of roles between chiefs and "great ones of the lineages" is probably even more conspicuous in modern times, as the former are now somewhat integrated into the Portuguese administrative system. As far as I can judge, great efforts have often been made by the white rulers to keep the traditional patterns of Tahwa chieftainship - al-

(10) Cf. H. Kuper, An African aristocracy, p. 93

though the incumbents are bound to play a secondary role.

The chief-of-the-drum is now called Regulo and has, as a rule, quite a large area under him. His sub-chiefs (hosi-yata
tala) have now the title Cabo. These chiefs all draw salary from the Portuguese administration, and beyond that they are entitled to the tribute coming from their people (kuluva). I am told that a man coming home from a period of work in the Transvaal mines will "luva" his Cabo by giving him 100 escudos (R 2-50). Other people staying in their villages pay some maize or cashew-nuts as their tribute. When wild animals are killed, certain parts must be given to the chief.

I am not able to say how the modern relationship between the Regulo and the Cabo is worked out, but a Cabo takes at least part of the tribute to his Regulo.

Every Cabo divides his district into parts (zipanze) and installs counsellors (manghanakana) as his own sub-chiefs. These are "not even known by the Portuguese administration", i.e. they draw no regular salary. They are the collectors of tribute for the Cabo, and "they can come back home with something. As people do not pay tribute in beer any longer, but in peanuts, or cashew-nuts, he may sell what he has received as his part".

I am not fully acquainted with the present extent of jurisdiction of these three types of chiefs, but I know that they act as judges in certain cases and have some right to fine the culprit.

Although there is, in general, no reason to believe that chiefs over-step their authority, it is not surprising that their rights create a certain opposition among people. Informants showed evidence of a belief that the chief asks his ancestral spirits to send trouble among people in his chiefdom so that he may have cases to judge (and get paid). Two of my informants, independently of each other, volunteered a description of an installation of a chief (in different parts of the area), where a prayer with the following contents was said to be part of the ritual:

"Let them quarrel, let them beat each other, let them cut each other, so that there will be people coming to be judged... so that this chief gets something to eat... "

"Xisola-hosi, sola u sukile" ("If you want to criticize the chief, do it from a distance") says a Tshwa proverb, which could be applicable in many other parts of the world. It is possible, however, that the attitudes expressed through these informants are not too uncommon among the Tshwa. It is also wellknown that the Tshwa chief must protect himself against the witchcraft of anyone wanting to harm him. "A chief can get certain amulets (zitshungulo) to prevent people from casting a spell over him".

The importance of the lineage

I have combined observations from my long acquaintance with the Tshwa people with statements from informants, to give the following outline of one aspect of the kinship system:

In traditional Tshwa society, the lineage (lixaka) is the most important kin group, to which this definition is applicable:

"An agnatic lineage consists of an original male ancestor and all his descendants through males of three, four, five or n generations. The lineage group consists of all the members of a lineage alive at a given time".(11)

Every Tshwa lineage is marked by the name of the man who counts as its founder. This name is called xibongo (related to the verb ku bong - "to thank; to praise"), and is at the end of the list of paternal ancestors, which a Tshwa person normally can recite.

Such knowledge is obviously a means of strengthening an individual's identification with his kin group. It also establishes, for the living, the unseen ancestors as part of the lineage group. The most senior male member of a lineage, Wahombe wa lixaka ("The Great-one-of-the-lineage"), is the

(11) A.R.Radcliffe-Brown and D.Forde, op. cit. p. 14

recognized leader of this group, but he is well aware that the "real" kin elders are watching from beyond the grave.

The lineage is the primary group through which Tswana persons expect "life" (yutswa). ⁽¹²⁾ It is therefore necessary that the lineage be maintained intact and united. This aim is furthered by keeping "right relationships" both with the ancestors and within the group. ⁽¹³⁾

Such relationships between living lineage members, which may be expressed as a system of mutual rights and obligations, are mainly based upon the three factors of sex, age, and primogeniture.

Difference of status between the sexes is primarily based upon the fact that only men can continue their own lineage. "A woman belongs to the lineage of her father, but her children do not". ⁽¹⁴⁾ As a nahani (actually a designation of "father's sister", but used in general for female members of the agnatic lineage), the woman will continue to play a role in her own lineage, even after her marriage. With age, this role can become very important. But the nahani can never carry the name of her lineage over into new generations, nor can she be part of any line of succession.

Generally speaking, the older a person is, the higher is his status, and consequently, the more respect is he (or she) entitled to. The climbing up the status ladder among the Tswana is thus not frustrated or stopped as in a western society, where retirement from a job which has given a person his status suddenly puts him down to a much lower position.

In spite of this, primogeniture (yutswa) is another principle that often overrides differences in life-years. This principle works vertically, making the generation gap a

(12) See chapter on "Quest for life", pp. 104

(13) On "right relationships", see further pp. 225 ff.

(14) A.S. Redcliffe-Brown and D. Forde, op. cit. p. 14

determining status factor. It also works horizontally, differentiating within a group of siblings, or between classificatory brothers and sisters. The generation of a man's father always has precedence over his own, even if some of his father's brothers (who are all called "father") may be younger than himself. (15)

The great respect for Father (Eaba), which is instilled into every Tshwa child, is by extension shown to all whom a person calls "Father", as well as to all whom he calls hahani. (16) This included all lineage members of his father's generation.

Furthermore, respect must be shown for any lineage member of the opposite sex. The lineage is bound to keep together, and just because of this necessity, no sexual relations of any kind may occur between lineage members, no matter how distantly related they may appear to be.

"The violent emotions engendered by sexual affection would blast and disrupt family unity built upon the earlier established filial-familial affections..... Overt sexual rivalry within the functioning kinship group cannot be permitted". (17)

For this reason, the Tshwa concept of incest (xixaka) is extended to all who are members of the same agnatic lineage, and upheld by strong sanctions.

The seriousness with which members of a lineage regard sexual rivalry is also indicated by the custom called

(15) This is quite possible in a context of polygyny!

(16) The word hahani probably means "little father". Junod states that hahani derives from the Ronga word rarana (= "little father"; diminutive of raru = father), "as r often changes into h in Thonga phonetics". H.A. Junod, Life of a South African tribe, I, p. 227

(17) E.A. Hoebel, op. cit. p. 290

masunganyi. The principle of this custom is that no men of the same lineage should share the same woman. If this should happen, a curse will be hanging over their heads, and these men are not allowed to see each other any more.

Institutionalized respect and avoidance reflect potential strain in the relationships involved. This would be especially true in the father-son relationship but also in other connections within the lineage group. Witchcraft accusations often fall on a hahani, particularly in cases of barrenness or abortions on the part of her brother's children. It is recognized that such conflicts are dangerous for the whole lineage group. Without lineage unity, life for its members is at low ebb.

Boynale's words about the lineage in Bantu-speaking tribes are certainly relevant also to the Tshwa people:

"The lineage undoubtedly is the most important purely kinship group among most of the tribes, the group which exercised most social control over the people and within which there is the most intimate social contact and the most stable system of reciprocal rights and duties". (18)

Influences from outside, both cultural and religious, has diminished the importance of the lineage group among Tshwa. It will later be shown how Christian worship and ethics tend to remove the special importance of lineage unity and 'right relationships'. (19) Simultaneously, a stronger emphasis on the nuclear family can be discerned.

Marriage and Family

Polygyny is a well-established custom in the traditional Tshwa society. Not only for chiefs, but also for ordinary men, the traditional ideal is to have several wives. Kpanze

(18) W. Boynale, op. cit., p. 80

(19) See further pp. 223 ff.

...as far as money is concerned. Some like money more than anything else. Others love to have lots of cattle .. For us Tshwa men like to have several wives". (20)

...that every Tshwa man additionally had more than one wife. The fairly even distribution of the sexes would make this an impossibility. Furthermore, all marriages always had been based upon the exchange of nzhowolo (beads-wealth), availability of riches and nahowolo (dowry), and with the dowry, the number of wives a man may have.

With nzhowolo transferred from the man's group to his future wife's people, a new relationship was cemented between two lineages. The man's kin gained potential child-bearing power, while the woman's lineage was compensated through nzhowolo, which could, in turn, be used to acquire a similar child-bearing power into that kinship group. (21) A marriage, therefore, had the character of a contract between two different kin groups, with nzhowolo guaranteeing its continuity as long as the conditions implied by the nahowolo custom were fulfilled.

Nzhowolo was indeed a "child-price", as Jeffreys has pointed out. (22) In case the wife for which nzhowolo had been paid should not be fertile, her lineage had the obligation to provide another woman to bear children in her place. This was automatically provided for in the term of hizana, by which a young woman's brother's daughter is called. This word is derived from the verb ku hiza (= to wash), indicating that this girl would be the normal choice of the lineage to

(20) P.J. Mbanze, Ngungu wa Rutshwa, p. 101

(21) Cf. Mbanze, The realm of a Rain-Queen, p. 75

(22) A.D. Jeffreys, "O lobolo e o preço da criança" (Rev. de Estudos da Prov. de Moçambique, XXXI, NO 132, Jul-Set., 1962)

be sent to 'wash' the womb of her abun (father's sister) of the shame that follows sterility. This custom may, of course, be seen as a variation on the polygynous custom of a woman, after the death of her husband, clinging to the husband's kin. If the husband had died, would also, in principle, be 'washed' by the abun. (23)
hlazana.

Nzhowolo has through the ages played an important role as guarantee against easy divorces. A man would expect his wife's kin to return the nzhowolo without any reasons. His own kin would also prevail on him to fulfill his obligations to his wife for whom nzhowolo had been paid. This insistence would, of course, be the more potent if the man took any more wives.

The concept of nzhowolo ('till death do us part') has been explained in some detail - and in the last chapter - as background to changes and even outright attacks which it has been exposed to since the introduction of Christianity. It is true that information from a large number of young men indicates that nzhowolo is still being paid in the majority of cases. There are modern instances where parents freely state that they will not accept any nzhowolo payment for their daughter. Furthermore, some Churches in Mozambique have taken a definite stand against the nzhowolo custom, making it clear in their teaching that "as good Christians we have nothing to do with this custom". (24)

In spite of such declarations, however, the nzhowolo custom comes back in another form: parents refusing to receive nzhowolo when their daughter is married to a man who is not of their own tribe.

(23) See "Death and Life Eternal" . . . 168

(24) Although no official statement from the Protestant Churches working among the Tonga is known, particularly the Presbyterian Church, working among Ronga and Tsonga has taken a strong stand on this issue. It is remarkable that in the "Bhengu movement", lobola ('bride-wealth') is the only Xhosa custom insisted upon! (A.A. Dubb, The Role of the Church in an Urban African Society, 1964, p. 18)

son-in-law! This may mean paying an amount similar to the traditional nzhowolo, but without the accompanying stabilizing conditions. (25)

Another change in attitude is indicated by the fact that it is now mainly the young man's responsibility (not his kin's) to supply the money for his bride-wealth. The first contract period at the Transvaal mines is usually connected with this need.

Such a shift in responsibility reflects a continuous change in attitude towards the marriage connection itself. The bond between man and wife now seems to supersede the traditional one between their respective kinship groups. There is some evidence that this trend opens the door to more frequent divorces.

From a structural point of view, it would appear that a Tshwa woman has her lowest status as a wife. She is an outsider in her husband's lineage group with many obligations and few rights. In general, a newly married wife is not much more than a servant to her parents-in-law, and indirectly to her husband. This agrees in principle with "the Zulu attitude that a woman is a minor and must submit meekly to her husband... and whose whole purpose in life is to serve and satisfy him and his lineage". (26) It should be pointed out, however, that the young wife normally has several other women - wives of her husband's brothers - to relate to on fairly free terms. This appears to be one definite advantage of the patrilineal extended family (27) in comparison to the conjugal one living in isolation from the kin (see below).

The period of "apprenticeship" (kukoroka) of the new wife

(25) H. J. S. Lang, Africa in social change, p. 176

(26) A. Vilakazi, Zulu transformations, p. 33

(27) Radcliffe-Brown and D. Forde, African systems of kinship and marriage, p. 9

was also the time when she was introduced into customs and regulations of her husband's lineage. It also helped the young couple over the difficult time of transition, especially as far as food is concerned.

The wife's standing in her husband's lineage can, as a rule, be enhanced only through the children she bears. As a mother, she becomes the nucleus of a new "house" (yindlu) and will be honoured by her husband as well as by children and parents-in-law.

It is also as a mother that a woman becomes the important link to the warm relationship which is usually experienced between children and their maternal grandparents, as well as the mother's brother.

It is customary that a Tshwa boy spends some years of his early childhood in the home of his maternal grandparents, or of his mother's brother. Both grandparents and mother's brother are called by the same term, Kokwane (plur. vakokwane), indicating that the same kind of behaviour is expected before them all. One informant recalled his maternal grandfather's love towards himself and other young relatives living in his home. "He always took good care of us, and he wanted to teach us as much as possible of sacrifices and other Tshwa customs".

While children's relations with uterine relatives are thus free and easy, much respect and even avoidance is traditionally expected from the husband in connection with the same set of relatives. Such rules make relations particularly difficult with his mother-in-law and his wife's elder sisters, who were all called vakokati, while he may be on freer terms with the younger sisters of his wife, the tinhombe.

Some of these strict avoidance regulations have lost their rationale in modern times, and "it now happens that a son-in-law eats with his mother-in-law without even thinking about avoidance". Also in other respects, the traditional rules concerning family life are in a process of change. The custom of kukoroka is now, according to reports, completely

abandoned. "Now they just get married and go to live at home wherever they wish".

An increased preoccupation with the conjugal family, at the expense of the extended one, is also an indication of changes which have come through the gradual introduction of money into the subsistence economic system of the Tshwa. In the subsistence economy, every village harvested, at least in principle, as much as their neighbours. Monetary economy, on the other hand, distinguishes those who have from those who have not and fosters individualistic attitudes towards belongings. (28)

Such attitudes are further strengthened nowadays in the urban situation, where so many Tshwa conjugal families live far away from their relatives, although they, in general, keep some contact with their rural kin group.

Modern specific emphasis on the conjugal family introduces great psychological pressure in case no children are born in a marriage. Informants' statements indicate clearly that offspring are still regarded as the necessary fruit of a union, although modern Tshwa parents in general do not regard a large number of children as a particular blessing.

The traditional solution in cases of barrenness - as the wife's kin group sent another woman to "wash" her womb - is, of course, totally unacceptable in Christian context. All Protestant Churches in the Tshwa area have - similar to most other Christian Churches coming to Africa from outside the continent (29) - from the beginning completely refused to

(28) Cf. F. Schannan, "The Impact of money on an African subsistence economy", in Readings in Anthropology ed. by Deming-Hood p. 390

(29) S.A. Ananias, "The Christian Church and African heritage", in Sam DeGai (ed), Christianity in Africa as seen by the Africans p. 132

accept traditional polygyny as a valid form of marriage. It is claimed by informants that the present picture presents easier and more frequent divorces among Tshwa Christians (for those who have not been married in Church, or by civil ceremony), and, on the other hand, many men taking a second wife "in secrecy".

The uncertainty concerning offspring is, in fact, the stated main reason why such a large percentage of the Methodist Episcopal Church constituency do not enter marriage by Church ceremonies. This fact is reflected by the large number of Tshwa Christians who remain as "members on trial", (30) as church marriage is a firm condition for becoming a "full member". (31)

The web of inter-personal ties

In traditional Tshwa society, the ideal was that kinsmen lived together in a constant inter-relation of obligations and rights, depending upon the need and status ascribed by the structure of relationship. Thus, the neighbour (muakelane: plur. vaakelane, lit. meaning "the one building together") was ideally a kinsman, either of the same lineage, or through cognatic or affinal relationship. However, in several parts of the Tshwa area, this kind of ideal situation was rather fictitious, and as time passed, it became even further removed from reality.

As people of other tribes entered a Tshwa chiefdom with the intention to settle there, they had to pay their respect to the ruling chief by certain gifts (ku luva), and they were then, normally, given land on which to build.

(30) Of a total constituency within the Methodist Episcopal Church in 1967 of 31,303, adult members "on trial" were 10,198. (Relatório Oficial da Conferência Anual da Igreja Metodista no Sudeste da África, 1967)

(31) This is a local regulation, not valid in Methodist Churches in other countries.

accept traditional polygyny as a valid form of marriage. It is claimed by informants that the present picture presents easier and more frequent divorces among Tshwa Christians (for those who have not been married in Church, or by civil ceremony), and, on the other hand, many men taking a second wife "in secrecy".

The uncertainty concerning offspring is, in fact, the stated main reason why such a large percentage of the Methodist Episcopal Church constituency do not enter marriage by Church ceremonies. This fact is reflected by the large number of Tshwa Christians who remain as "members on trial", (30) as church marriage is a firm condition for becoming a "full member". (31)

The web of inter-personal ties

In traditional Tshwa society, the ideal was that kinsmen lived together in a constant inter-relation of obligations and rights, depending upon the need and status ascribed by the structure of relationship. Thus, the neighbour (muakelane; plur. vaakelane, lit. meaning "the one building together") was ideally a kinsman, either of the same lineage, or through cognatic or affinal relationship. However, in several parts of the Tshwa area, this kind of ideal situation was rather fictitious, and as time passed, it became even further removed from reality.

As people of other tribes entered a Tshwa chiefdom with the intention to settle there, they had to pay their respect to the ruling chief by certain gift (ku luva), and they were then, normally, given land on which to build.

(30) Of a total constituency within the Methodist Episcopal Church in 1967 of 31,383, adult members "on trial" were 10,100. (Relatório Oficial da Conferência Anual da Igreja Metodista no Sudeste da África, 1967)

(31) This is a local regulation, not valid in Methodist Churches in other countries.

As a rule, relations with such newcomers were friendly and peaceful. Hospitality to strangers is, as among other Bantu-speaking peoples, a traditional duty among the Tshwa, (32) and the close living together with neighbours often developed satisfactory patterns of mutual assistance.

Friction did arise, however, both between kinsmen and in relation to neighbours. Conflicts between father and son, or between mother-in-law and son-in-law, were, for instance, not unusual. Such friction, however, called for quick reconciliation along structural lines. (33) This was possible as kinship obligations are defined in terms of more specific relationships than neighbourly obligations. Friction within the latter sphere could therefore not always be dealt with in an institutionalized way. This was particularly true when relationships were new and implied the proximity of people of widely different tribes and customs.

This kind of friction is said to be quite usual in the modern urban situation. At a church conference in 1966, held by the Methodist Episcopal Church, the "living close to people of all kinds of tribes in the cities" was taken up as one of the serious problems facing modern Christian Tshwa.

In the rural areas, work cooperation among neighbours, for instance in agriculture and house building, lessened any potential strain, and giving and taking in marriage increased communication between people of different groups.

Agriculture has certainly played an important part in easing relationships, as "all people digging together" gathered at the agricultural sacrifices several times a year. Sacrifices for rain were also made on a communal basis, rather than along kinship lines.

Companionship of a social nature was also found at occasions

(32) Cf. M. Janter, Reaction to conquest, p. 31.

(33) See below pp. 254 ff.

of sacrifices, both agricultural ones and kinship rituals. Communal drinking - with the accompanying free talk - was a necessary part of any sacrifice. On these occasions, generosity (wahana) on the part of the arranging headman was highly praised. Music and dancing often accompanied the drinking, except at specially solemn gatherings because of some serious curse (khombo) on the kin.

For the smaller group of a village, such social companionship was fostered, e.g., at the men's conversations in the special place for men (bandleni), which surely gave satisfaction and a deep sense of belonging. The women's gatherings at the place-of-the-pots (khombarini) together with the small children, when the chores of the day were done, for talking and story-telling, were equally full of both fun and depth.

Hunting expeditions together with men from the vicinity widened the sense of community both by providing togetherness and by necessitating a mutual trust in order to succeed in the hunt without hurting one another.

Companionship of a social nature did not always imply any obligations between the partakers, at least not beyond the immediate occasion. Fellow-hunters had duties towards each other as long as the hunt lasted. Mutual assistance at work meant helping e.g. with building a house, and the reward came in form of beer - and conversation. But beyond that, few obligations existed towards persons outside of the own kin. The wahana-ideal (generosity) could make some persons spend large parts of their belongings on meat and drink at some feasts, but this was more for enhancing one's status than fulfilling an obligation. However, attitudes similar to the rules about hospitality towards strangers were commendable in the case of needy ones in the neighbourhood. In times of hunger, mutual assistance extended far beyond ordinary neighbourliness.

Several proverbs emphasize this kind of attitude: "A kuvuna vanwani ku ti vehela shuva" (= "To help others is to lay up stores for oneself"), and "A kutama munhu kulahla"

(= "Not to give to a person is to bury him"). It was well to be prudent, however, so that the person you had helped would remember his benefactor. The proverb "Loku u hanyisa xisiwana, tsema ndiwe"! (= "If you save a poor man, cut his ear") is a relevant advice in this direction.

But when a severe accident, sickness or death struck the family, it was usually the kin-group that went into action. All such events were counted as curses (makhombo), and sinister powers were discerned as active agents behind them. Often witchcraft was suspected in all these cases, and any involvement might lead to allegations impossible to disprove. Sickness and death were often believed to be caused by revenging spirits, aiming their attacks on the kin-group as such. Furthermore, death contamination was thought of as a contagious evil influence, which clings to everyone connected with the stricken people or village. ⁽³⁴⁾

Consequently, neighbours and strangers kept their distance in such times of distress. A sense of mutual solidarity between those living together could go far in times of other types of need, but in crises of this nature solidarity did not, by custom, extend beyond the boundaries of the lineage and affinal kin.

In such cases, the traditional Tahwa acted in a way similar to other tribes in Southeast Africa:

"One should not be interpreted as saying that the non-Christians are not generous or solicitous about strangers", Vilakazi says about the Zulus. "But the fact of the matter is that among Zulus there are certain duties which are the function of the kinsmen first and foremost and which people would be reluctant to perform for a stranger. Burying a dead person, for example; or visiting and providing creature comfort for the sick". (35)

(34) See further pp. 243-245

(35) A. Vilakazi, op. cit. p. 30; Cf. M. Hunter, op. cit. pp. 228 and 350

Some aspects of social life in mine compounds

As tens of thousands of Tshwa men are always at work in the Transvaal mines, and most of my informants were interviewed while residing in some mine compound, it is important to establish some features of the social life in such a situation.

Each mine compound gets its supply of African labour through a widespread network of agencies. Recruiting stations for this purpose are placed at strategic spots in rural parts of Southern Africa, including Southern Moçambique until the 22nd parallel. In principle, a work-seeking man goes to one of these recruiting stations, signs a contract for one year's work in any Transvaal mine, and is subsequently transported by the recruiting company to the mine needing labour. Once at the mine, most Moçambique men seem to sign on for another six months of work, before being transported back to the home region.

Obviously, this closed recruiting system, with only limited possibility for the work-seeking man to choose place and conditions of work, aims at making the transfer from home village to work situation as swift and painless as possible. This type of migratory labour supply is no phase in an ordinary urbanisation process. At least as far as Moçambique labourers are concerned, it rather appears to be a conscious

incapsulation effort, seeking to keep the men's minds constantly turned towards their homelands, while they sell their labour to the mine.

A mine compound is a self-contained unit. Most men spend all their free time within the compound area. Food is supplied by the mine, and shops specially stocked with items appealing to rural Africans are part of the compound unit. "Bars" with both European and African types of strong drink cater to the compound dwellers.

After the first few months of work, the major part of the worker's wages is sent directly to the recruiting station in

his home-region, to be paid out on his return home. This is another dominant factor in keeping the migrant's attention directed towards his home country during his contract period at the mines. The "Deferred Pay" system leaves little cash in the man's pocket, thus removing incentive to go to town for any extensive shopping. Restrictions on Mozambique compound workers to visit urban African townships further discourage communication with people outside of the compound area.

Migrant labourers in the Transvaal mines, thus, cannot be classified as urbanised, either from a structural viewpoint or a cultural one. On the whole, they are tribesmen who are integral parts of life in their tribal areas, temporarily absent "to fight with the stones", in order to improve their life in the home village.

Important similarities with the Red Xhosa in East London can readily be found. (36) But there are differences at least on two points:

a) Incapsulation of Red Xhosa in East London is voluntary. There is no power outside of his own cultural sphere imposing any incapsulation. For the mine workers, on the other hand, the whole labour supply system is geared towards an incapsulation process, in which little choice is left to the individual.

b) The Red Xhosa is 'incapsulated' in his own tribal culture and values, while the Tswana compound worker, e.g., is rather kept within the influence of the larger geographical sphere of his homeland. In the compound, a Tswana is generally classed with the "Nyembaan" group (from the name of the principal town in the home area, Inhambane), together with Tonga and Chopi, and sometimes Tsonga ("Shanghaan"), who all understand some form of the Tswana language.

In this connection, it is also important to observe that

(36) P. Mayer, Townsmen or tribesmen, especially pp. 93-94

and Christians - working on Christian Tshwe as well as on non-Christians.

Red Tshwe and Tshwe Tshwe are usually housed together in the compound of the compound. Usually they are in lower compounds. They live together in each row. All activities inside the compound - work and religion are shared in this way. One man is regarded as room leader, responsible for work, and all money goes to him and he is everything that has to do with the living together.

Red Tshwe and Tshwe Tshwe keep close together in all leisure time activities. They eat, drink and talk together, sometimes they (working on) - basket, working on creative embroidery (working on) - basket. Some more compound-accustomed men with themselves as tailors, cobblers or barbers. In their

... they enter into communication with men of ... the compound. But, beyond that, the network of ... is a compound which is of the class-knit ... (35) ... and who ... (36)

... his contacts to ... living in other rooms or ... visits relatives in ... Such visits keep ... with events at home.

... factor for keeping ... (37) ... Dancing ... (38) ... Sports

(37) ...

(38) ...

(39) ...

activities sponsored by the mine attract a few, and literacy
classes are attended by some. But even there, the religious
group is the men speaking the same language. Church activi-
ties in compounds induce some crossing of tribal bound-
aries, but, in general, churches are also tied to specific
language groups. This aspect will be further developed
pp. 92 - 93.

3. TRADITIONAL TSHWA BELIEFS

All through this dissertation we will keep comparing what is traditional with the modern, in order to understand what is happening in Tshwa life. Thus, more features of traditional religion and similar beliefs will be gradually introduced. It is, however, necessary to make a somewhat systematic presentation of the salient features of Tshwa traditional beliefs, to give a background to subsequent presentations and arguments.

There has been no effort on my part to reconstruct Tshwa religion and traditional customs as they might have been many years back, before European influence had had time to assert itself. What is described in this chapter has been found as a live part of the thinking of those men - most of whom are Christians - who served as my informants. Facts about religion and traditions coming readily from Tshwa Christians may be assumed to be part of the frame of reference, into which they will fit everything coming to them from the outside.

For the Tshwa, the world of religion is the world of spirits. Even if there are many religious symbols, like trees or stones used for worship, drums "belonging to the spirits", and certain vessels only used for sacred purposes, idolatry as such is completely unknown. "Fetishes" or amulets do not fall into this category, as they are things manipulated but not worshipped.

The Tshwa spirit beliefs do not mean, however, that they should be classified as animists, as this term implies belief that all things have personalised spirits in them. The Tshwa believe in several kinds of spirits, all of them emanating from and directly re-

ferable to persons. But they do not believe that trees, wells, stones, etc., have spirits living in them, as the theoretical "animist" ought to do. (1) The branches of a tree may be moved by a spirit, a well may be ruled over by another spirit, and animals may be sent by a spiritual force, but these spirits are, again, the essence of a person, either dead or alive.

For the Tshwa, spirits are not inherent innatural phenomena, though these may be infused by a human, personal will. Similarly, a 'doctor' is believed to infuse healing power into his medicines by saying the 'right' words over them before use. In other words, the Tshwa see a personal will behind most events. Nothing "just happens". There must be someone "sending" the event for some special reason, whether the "sender" is a witch or a spirit of a dead person, either related or unrelated to the afflicted individual.

It thus becomes evident that the Tshwa believe in an ordered universe, although the elements of this order may differ essentially from European cosmology. The Tshwa expect the soil to give them food, and they see no reason why their health should be unstable at all, unless laws laid down in Nature, or certain personal relationships have been violated. It would, therefore, appear that Tshwa cosmological concepts are ethically determined.

They also count on the existence of evil forces, attempting to destroy the order of their universe, but even there personal power is involved, making it possible somehow to deal with the affliction in a

(1) Cf. H.R. Hays, From sun to moon, pp. 93-94.

rational manner -- although their reasoning is based on completely different assumptions than western scientific thinking.

The Power of the Sky (Tilo)

When faced with events which seem to defeat explanation, as, for instance, lightning, or the birth of albinos, the Tshwa ascribe them to the mysterious Sky-Power called Tilo (= "Sky," "Heaven"). By doing so, they have, in fact, expelled the actual event from their ethical universe, into the mysterious realm where events happen without any tangible reason. Although such an affliction has been named by referring it to Tilo, this connection implies that no remedy can be sought, and no blame laid. The Tshwa proverb makes this clear: "You cannot fight with the Sky" (A kulwi ni Tilo).⁽²⁾

Tilo is not spoken of very often, but it is nevertheless the important backdrop against which the other spirits perform their actions. This reluctance to speak about Tilo is reflected in the following example:

A Tonga man pointed out that during his childhood he and his brothers were admonished not to mention the name of Nungungulu (which now is used as the Christian name for God, both among Tonga and Tshwa people but which is one traditional Tonga name for Tilo). Only the alternative names Nyamavale (= The One of many colours), or Nyakhombekulu (= The One with the wide face) could be used.

The primary reason why Tilo is not mentioned so often is probably the fact that there was no organ-

⁽²⁾ It may seem most natural to translate the Tshwa word Tilo by the English equivalent "Heaven." However, "Heaven" is a loaded word to many people, immediately calling forth certain associations formed by various beliefs. To avoid our "reading in" Christian concepts into the Tshwa beliefs in Tilo, I have preferred to use the more neutral translation "Sky Power."

rational manner -- although their reasoning is based on completely different assumptions than western scientific thinking.

The Power of the Sky (Tilo)

When faced with events which seem to defeat explanation, as, for instance, lightning, or the birth of albino, the Tshwa ascribe them to the mysterious Sky-Power called Tilo (= "Sky," "Heaven"). By doing so, they have, in fact, expelled the actual event from their ethical universe, into the mysterious realm where events happen without any tangible reason. Although such an affliction has been named by referring it to Tilo, this connection implies that no remedy can be sought, and no blame laid. The Tshwa proverb makes this clear: "You cannot fight with the Sky" (A kulwi ni Tilo).⁽²⁾

Tilo is not spoken of very often, but it is nevertheless the important backdrop against which the other spirits perform their actions. This reluctance to speak about Tilo is reflected in the following example:

A Tonga man pointed out that during his childhood he and his brothers were admonished not to mention the name of Nungungulu (which now is used as the Christian name for God, both among Tonga and Tshwa people but which is one traditional Tonga name for Tilo). Only the alternative names Nyamavale (= The One of many colours), or Nyakhombekulu (= The One with the wide face) could be used.

The primary reason why Tilo is not mentioned so often is probably the fact that there was no organ-

⁽²⁾ It may seem most natural to translate the Tshwa word Tilo by the English equivalent "Heaven." However, "Heaven" is a loaded word to many people, immediately calling forth certain associations formed by various beliefs. To avoid our "reading in" Christian concepts into the Tshwa beliefs in Tilo, I have preferred to use the more neutral translation "Sky Power."

ized direct worship of this Sky Power. Even if many traditional beliefs are verbalized and forwarded to new generations by teaching and telling, it should be observed that doctrinal teaching as such was no important element of Tahiti religion. Doctrines were taken for granted, as part of Nature, or part of Creation (Ntumbuluko), and often mentioned in passing during the course of an evening's story-telling. Doctrines were also "acted out" in symbolic actions at the occasions of sacrifice. Furthermore, they were etched dramatically on the mind when mentioned by a diviner as the cause of a dreaded affliction.

As the Sky Power was not worshipped, and thus the belief in this Power was never reinforced by any symbolic sacrificial act, it is not surprising that some Tahitians claim that they know nothing of Tilo, except as a place "up in the sky." Still, I find that informants over 40 years of age all know of this Power, while the younger generation pleads almost complete ignorance. Maybe the falling into disuse of traditional forms of story-telling, and the modern custom of sending children away to schools, outside of parental control and influence, contribute to this state of affairs.

Characteristics of the Sky Power (Tilo)

The atmospheric aspect of the Sky Power is the most obvious one, best implied in names like "The One who speaks by himself," i.e., through lightning and thunder (Huanawa Mulayee), or "The One who thunders and rains" (Iulizinelakuna). Prayers for rain are normally addressed to the ancestors (tinguluve), but the strange rite of kole wo lava vula (special supplication for rain) shows that the final authority in this matter is the Sky Power.⁽³⁾

⁽³⁾ See "Worship, sacrifice and sacraments," p. 126

Lightning made people dread Tilo. It strikes anywhere, and nobody can feel secure from the attack from above. It does not necessarily follow that the Sky Power was thought of only as evil, even if one informant stated: "I see that the Tshwa formerly saw all evil as coming from Tilo."

As the ultimate giver of the 'cool' blessing of rain, Tilo was seen as the Supreme Life-giving Power, the ultimate source of everything necessary to make life endurable. It would seem that this function was clouded in people's minds by the many ancestral spirits who were popularly conceived of as senders of blessings (and curses!).

A personal greeting might be formulated: "May the sky provide for you so that you may live (many) days" (A Tilo a si bu v'kele mbuva mu hanya hi masiku).⁽⁵⁾

It must be stressed, however, that for most people the Sky Power was conceived of as a mysterious threat. It was the source of everything unusual or unexplainable. Their attitudes towards Tilo thus became ambivalent, leaning over, however, on the negative side.

While normal children always inspire gratefulness to the ancestral spirits, abnormal babies are suddenly seen as signs of Sky Power activity. A certain person who had been born as a cripple "with the arms almost sitting on his thighs," was called "Na Tilo" (= From the sky).

In the case of twin-births, I am not certain whether they are regarded as caused by Tilo or not. Junod does not hesitate on this point, seeing that twins were called "children of heaven" (vana va Tilo) among the Kongo people around Lourenço Marques.⁽⁶⁾

⁽⁴⁾Cf. description of 'cool' and 'hot,' pp. 214-15

⁽⁵⁾E. Mugambe, Letdikazani, p. 58.

⁽⁶⁾P.A. Junod, Life of a South African Tribe, II, 433.

I hold it most probable that Tshwa formerly also saw twin-births in this way, although clear evidence is hard to come by among modern Tshwa, even non-Christians.

Albino-births are regarded as caused by the Sky Power. The very word ndlati (= albino) is the same word as the one used for "lightning" in the closely related Tsonga language. The albino and the lightning are evidently seen as sent by the same Power. Strong evidence of belief among Tshwa Christians that albinos come as a result of spiteful actions and words against God, further strengthens this point.

One traditional name of Tilo takes the Sky Power out of the exclusively spatial context. It is the name Nutangi, which has been explained as "Nya titanga tontlhe" (= "of all ages"). This name gives a clear indication of the One who is and has been from the very beginning, although the epithet "eternal" hardly would fit, as Mbiti reminds us that for Africans "time is a two-dimensional phenomenon, with a long past, a present, and virtually no future."⁽⁷⁾ Still, we find at least the germ of 'eternity' among the Tshwa, in their proverb: "The Sky does not die, but people do" (Tilo a gifi, kufa vanhu).⁽⁸⁾

I am fully aware that the Tshwa belief in Tilo corresponds with similar beliefs among most other African peoples, although we find them pronounced in much greater detail in certain parts of Africa. There is also a modern trend, both among African and European writers on Africa, to speak of the "Sky Power" of African beliefs in Judeo-Christian terms, simply using the name "God."⁽⁹⁾ I agree fully with the biblical reference used in this connection that

⁽⁷⁾ J. Mbiti, African religions and philosophy, p. 17.

⁽⁸⁾ See further pp. 260-263.

⁽⁹⁾ J. Mbiti, ibid., pp. 30-31; E.E. Idowu, "God," in Dickson-Ellin (ed.), Biblical revelation and African beliefs; H. J. Jeremias, Religion in Africa, p. 59.

God "in past generations ... did not leave himself without witness,"⁽¹⁰⁾ and I hope that my whole treatment of Tshwa religion and culture will reveal my tremendous respect for the same. Still, I suggest that translating Tilo by the name "God" would only tend to confuse the issue, without bringing forth any practical advantages. Particularly as we are here attempting to compare new and old, I am satisfied that the rendering "Sky Power" or even better retaining the Tshwa name Tilo, will best serve our purpose.

A richly varied world of spirits

Besides the Sky Power, there are four different types of spiritual beings populating the Tshwa world:

1. ancestral spirits (tinguluve);
2. spirits-of-revenge (mipfhukwa or vanyamikwa-xani);
3. foreign, poisonous and sickness-bringing spirits (mandiki);
4. ghosts (zigona or fiphoka).

Of these, only the first kind are spirits belonging to my own kin. It is, of course, realized that all different kin-groups have their ancestral spirits (tinguluve), and I need never be concerned with the late grandfathers and great-grandfathers of other lineages than my own, as they know me as little as I know them. Tinguluve are strictly kept within the own kin.

In spite of this, the dead of other lineages can exert some influence on my life. But in such cases they take on some new quality, or a special reason is explained, ^{as when he was a mandiki, or a zigona} and the name of the dead changed.

An ancestral spirit (nguluve; plur. tinguluve) can never influence a person who does not belong to his

⁽¹⁰⁾ Acts 14: 16-17 (25V)

own kin. But under certain circumstances, this same spirit-of-a-dead may enter a strange village to kill persons who are alleged to have done something evil against him or his relatives. This spirit is then no longer a nguluve. He has changed activity, address and name, and has become a mupfhukwa or nyamukwaxani ("spirit of revenge").

Ancestral spirits (tinguluve) are often believed to send sickness to their people, but there are also other spiritual beings which are particularly obtrusive in this respect. Besides sicknesses sent by the mentioned "spirits-of-revenge," certain sicknesses are ascribed to mandiki, who, in general, are spirits of foreigners dead long ago.

Even among Europeans, ghosts are believed to be spirits of dead persons "coming back." The difference one notes among the Tswana is that their ghosts (zigo-no) are not spirits of their own dead, but again appearances of dead persons belonging to other kinship groups. Many interesting data could be related about Tswana ghost beliefs, but in this thesis I will leave them out, as they have no strong bearing upon the subject at hand.

What has been said so far confirms in principle Junod's observation about shikwembu (ancestral spirit) among the Tsonga and Ronga peoples: "Every human being at his death turns into a shikwembu and becomes an ancestor-god for his descendants and a hostile spirit as regards his former enemies."⁽¹¹⁾

Ancestral spirits (Tinguluve)

Every Tswana person who dies becomes a nguluve (= "spirit of a dead of my own kin"). His connection with his kin group is at least as strong after his death as before. He remains an integral part of the kinship system. Death seems to be regarded as

⁽¹¹⁾ H.A. Junod, op. cit., II, p. 77.

the highest step to the ladder of social prestige. His influence is even older and stronger, and the reasons for his actions are beyond question.

It is recognized, however, that spirits of dead children and of persons who die childless, have less influence than other tinguluve:

"A dead child cannot ask its father for a sacrifice. Nor could a childless spirit be sacrificed to. To whom should he go and request food and clothing? Such spirits would have to eat left-overs."

Thus the plight of the childless person was clearly illuminated, simultaneously pointing out the tremendous importance of having children of one's own. "A dead childless brother could go to his brother and ask for attention," but this clearly implied a secondary position.

The most important of all tinguluve are the father's father and the father's father's father of the kin elder, always being the most honoured guests at the big, regular sacrifice during the winter season (mbembe ya moko), or at the bandha (occasion for "weeping for the dead"). Thus, the social order was maintained, and reinforced, by paying special attention to the top figures of the own family or lineage.⁽¹²⁾ However, when some crisis occurred, the object of the sacrifice of propitiation would always be specially indicated by the divining bones, and most informants agreed that there was some special nguluve in their various lineages who was known as a trouble-maker, descending (through the bones), and getting, far more attention than other ancestral spirits.

"A person who has lived an evil life is counted as a nguluve after his death, but he will be a troublesome nguluve. The divining bones will always point to him in connection with some troubles."

(12) Cf. H. Fortes, "Some refinements on ancestor worship in Africa" in African systems of thought, p. 133.

... it could be found,
... because of having
... supply and now kept troubled
... (Tiovane among the
... phembe among the Kh...

... tinguluve
... the family, (14) the ti-
... of everything impor-
... Apparently, it was
... had any supernuman
... This was possible
... ideal state of the tingu-
... (tu etl-la). However, this
... the tinguluve could be
... descendants:

The informant stated that this ku etlela
does not necessarily mean "sleep." The
closest translation of this verb is "to lie
down." So give the example of a snake lying
down, watching what is going on but without
really being involved. It is this strit-
ing position -- as regards the tinguluve --
that the worshippers fear.

It was the duty to report when people
were about to die or to harvest. Everything
throughout the village from outside, e.g., animals
and birds, were reported to the tinguluve.
Even the prayers of sacrifice often took
the form of reporting. In nlawute-a.

- (15) ... discovering a new well or water
hole and killed and his blood had to mingle
with the new water. The water would thus be
purified and would flow freely.
(16) ... call them "spiritual
offerings." nlawute-a, p. 50.

All such reports, and, on the other hand, observation that the spirit-of-a-dead must go to some close relative and pay attention, are evidence of the mutual inter-dependence between the ancestral spirits and their posterity. The living looked to their tinguluve as their immediate source of life and strength. They trusted their tinguluve for help in all respects. Good health in the family as well as among the domestic animals was a sign of ancestral blessings, and a narrow escape from an accident would be ascribed to the ancestors' watchful care.

A special case of blessing, mentioned by most informants, was finding something unexpectedly. Even today, finding money in the street or on the path seems immediately to direct the thought to the tinguluve, and such money must not be spent unwisely. It should be shared with one of the elders in the family, preferably the father, or invested in livestock, etc.

When everything went smoothly, the attitude towards the tinguluve was a happy one. But when sickness came to people or beasts, when the fields were scorched by a merciless sun, or when hopes for offspring were thwarted, this attitude changed to fear. "Tinguluve to tolove" (= "The ancestors are quarreling") was a common expression, when signs of this nature were found, and the diviner's help was sought to find out what needed to be done to avert the danger. If it was found that the tinguluve were causing the misfortune, they were usually propitiated through a sacrifice. (15)

Although "the tinguluve are kept strictly within the own kin," one special set of these spirits has an influence that stretches beyond the boundaries of their own lineage. The tinguluve of the

(15) See further "orship, sacrifice and sacraments," pp. 117-122.

chief's lineage have territorial significance in their capacity of "owners of the land." Thus, rain and other fertility blessings are primarily expected from them, and sacrifices for rain and agricultural success are directed towards them on behalf of all people within the chiefdom, irrespective of kin membership. Everyone is therefore expected to contribute to such communal rites, which are separate from the 'rites of life crises' performed along kinship lines. This dichotomy is observed also among other peoples in Africa:

"At planting time, each local community carries out rites to ask for rain and good crops, and these are community rites in which the mizimu (ancestral spirits) are not involved. But each family though it contributes beer for the general rite also privately asks its own mizimu for assistance." (16)

Later on in this dissertation I will attempt to demonstrate that this dichotomy between communal (or calendaric) rites and crises rites of the kin group may even have influenced the Tshwa in their response to Christianity. (17)

Tinguluve and the Sky Power (Tilo)

Among a few Tshwa of today I have found the notion that the tinguluve were not worshipped at all, but used exclusively as media for worshipping Tilo, the Sky Power. (18) Personally I believe this is a local adaptation, but there is evidence that the tinguluve were believed to have ready access to Tilo and were thus regarded as mediators between living humans and the remote power of the Sky. The following prayer, recollected by

(16) E. Colson, The Plateau Tonga of N. Rhodesia, p. 3.

(17) See p. 273-275

(18) Cf. Cullen-Young in Smith, African Ideas of God, p. 49.

an informant, certainly implies cooperation between these powers: "You tinguluve, stand up together with Mandlani (one of the names for Tilo), and fight for us!"

Only one ceremony is on record where there seems to have been a direct approach to Tilo without the tinguluve as intermediators. This is the so-called kole wo lava vula (special supplication for rain). It should be observed that this ceremony was performed only in times of unbearable drought and first after all other rain ritual resources had been exhausted. (19)

Foreign, possessive and sickness-bringing spirits
(Mandiki)

While tinguluve are closely intertwined with traditional Tshwa life, two other spiritual agents have become naturalized into Tshwa culture, in spite of having a somewhat foreign flavour. The first kind of these spirits is the ndiki (plur: mandiki), which can be classified as a "foreign, possessive and sickness-bringing spirit." Mandiki are at present recognized as being quite common in Tshwa country, and sickness is consequently often divined as being caused by these spirits. On the other hand, I have never heard that mandiki have been accused of causing somebody's death.

Any Tshwa informant would know that mandiki originate from the Zulu and Ndaue peoples, with the main stress on the latter. During the troubled years of the 19th century, many Zulu and Ndaue warriors died in the Tshwa area, often without possibility of a proper burial. (20) The spirits of

(19) See "Worship, sacrifice and sacraments," p. 126 for description.

(20) "One day while visiting a place where a battle had been fought I came across a number of skeletons ...", J. T. Hogue, G. Harry Agnew, A Pioneer Missionary, p. 75.

these warriors are believed to cling like black-jacks to persons who happen to step on their graves, and such persons come back home sick. Sometimes this kind of sickness is a form of mental derangement, sometimes it may be a serious shivering, but the type of sickness is not the determining factor, as any kind of illness may be diagnosed by the diviner as coming from mandiki.

Also among the Lulu people "amandiki" are known, and they are likewise claimed to be of recent origin, "coming from the North."⁽²¹⁾ It appears that similar beliefs are common in a large part of Africa, as the mashive among the Shona and the masabe of the Longa (Zambia) are all claimed to be spirits "of a foreign man or woman who died there."⁽²²⁾

Nowadays most mandiki are believed to have had several "hosts" since the time of warfare, and when a possessed person dies, his mandiki hover around looking for another suitable host. It is recognized that certain persons are more prone to becoming possessed than others. "Mandiki love some persons." Such mandiki which are temporarily without a human host are believed to stay close to a path or road, often at a crossroads, ready to settle on the right kind of person. One informant gave a drastic illustration as to how mandiki tend to cluster at certain places: "As one or other another goes to the same place to urinate, the 'free' mandiki are drawn to gather at special spots."

Mandiki are always talked about in plural. Because it is believed that a possessed person always

(21) H.B. Lee, "Spirit Possession among the Lulu," in Beattie-Finlayson (ed), Spirit Mediumship and Society in Africa, p. 130.

(22) M. Gelland, Shona Religion, p. 84; E. Colson, op. cit., p. 4.

has more than one ndiki. In popular belief, there seems to be an ongoing process of growth in kinds and numbers, similar to such a process in Rhodesia. (23) Several animal spirits have come into the picture among the Tshwa, for instance the baboon spirit and a hyena spirit. There is also the "ndiki ga xilungu" (= the white man's ndiki), not indicating that a white man could be possessed by mandiki, but that a ndiki emanating from some white man may cling to a possessed person!

It was claimed that a "ndiki ga xilungu" made a certain person eat only rice (no maize or cassava) and forced him always to be dressed in a jacket and to keep playing the guitar! (24) This is so much more remarkable, as other mandiki are said to fear everything "that belongs to civilisation." School books and most written or printed material seem to call for mandiki's presence. The Bible is greatly feared. It is also said that any lamp being lit when there are mandiki round will be put out by the spirits. Only "ordinary" fire can be tolerated. This seems to be one of mandiki's weak spots, where counter-measures are said to have been taken by persons wanting to be free from these spirits.

The obvious conflict between mandiki and modern civilisation suggests the possibility that the spirit possession connected with this comparatively new cult may be a cathartic expression in the face of frustrations brought by cultural and religious pressure from outside. The evidence that mandiki-possession actually is on the increase, and that traditional 'doctors' nowadays usually appear in the 'new' form of vanyamisoro (sing. nyamusoro), i.e., pos-

(23) Cf. N. Gelfand, op. cit., pp. 88 ff.

(24) Cf. Ibid., p. 90.

sessed by mandiki, is no direct proof of this explanation but provides basis for a working hypothesis well worth further investigation. (25)

A mandiki-possessed person is no longer his own. He has to follow the whims of the spirits, who often speak to him in dreams, because he knows that sickness will come if he disobeys. Many are said to spend large sums of money on strange pieces of clothing and other paraphernalia, which are believed to indicate the kind of nififi which has the person in his power. It is also commonly believed that mandiki make the possessed person do many things contrary to his own will. It would seem that, in such cases, he acts as an unknowing medium. As a 'doctor' performing under the influence of mandiki, he would claim total amnesia in regard to the period when "the spirit is upon him."

This is not the time for an investigation of mandiki possession from a psychological viewpoint. I find, however, that Margaret Field's research into spirit possession in Tswana supplies potentially important clues to this phenomenon, as she sets the "disassociated spirit" at the centre of her discussion. (26) However, it is imperative to remember that this is an 'explanation' completely foreign to Tshwa (or 'African') culture, and, while I admittedly search for rational explanations, I reiterate Anamoa's exhortation that "we should be able to acknowledge that the spiritual world in which the African believes is a reality." (27)

(25) Cf. L.G. Lee, op. cit., p. 133, where the author suggests a similar reason for changes in language used by mandiki-possessed.

(26) Cf. M. Field, Search for security, p. 57.

(27) Ibid., pp. 25-26.

(28) E.A. Anamoa, "The Christian Church and African heritage," in A.A. Desai, Christianity in Africa as seen by Africans, p. 134.

Establishing a relationship with mandiki (kutwazi-
zisa)

When the diagnosis has been confirmed that foreign, possessive, sickness-bringing spirits (mandiki) have settled on a certain person, the patient will first be told to get clothing of a certain kind, ⁽²⁹⁾ or to make a drum of a special design.

Subsequently a date is set for the actual treatment, called kutwazi. This word is clearly connected with the Zulu verb "ukuthwasa", used as a designation for 'possession' by ancestral spirits.

It means a 'coming out,' or 'emergence,' as of the new moon or the reappearance of a planet or constellation. ⁽³⁰⁾ The Tswana corresponding term, kutwazi-sa, is in the causative form, and would mean "to make (something) emerge." The treatment is, therefore, not what is normally implied by the word "exorcism," which would suggest the expulsion of the spirits. It is rather designed to "make the mandiki come out," so that a relationship can be stabilized with them and they may be able to "start working" through their new host. It is assumed that the initial sickness, caused by the mandiki, will disappear as soon as the mandiki "feel free to work" again.

At this curing function, the nyamusoro (see above) works himself into a dissociated state of frenzy, created through the steady drone of the special ndiki drums, the deafening clatter of the tinghele (tins filled with dried corn), and his own and his acolytes' repetitive singing. ⁽³¹⁾ His body begins shivering (kucheruka) and in a trance, he begins to

(29) In principle, these clothes are to show from what tribe the mandiki are, e.g., the Ndebele or Zulu tribe. Nowadays there are certain types of cloth, available in shops, called "mandiki-cloth."

(30) S.G. Lee, "Spirit Possession among the Zulu," in Beattie-Middleton (ed), Spirit Mediumship and Society in Africa, p. 134.

(31) Note strong similarities with the induction of dissociation in Bwana (M. Field, op. cit., pp. 56-57).

speaking with a strange sounding voice. He has then 'caught' the patient's mandiki (or, at least one of them), who are forced to reveal their names.

This element of finding the name of the spiritual agent, which will be observed also in the case of 'spirits-of-revenge,' is of crucial importance for the continuance of the treatment. The same urge to know the name of the spirit is seen behind the necessity to ask the divining bones to reveal what spirit or Power is causing the affliction. Lienhardt found a similar concept among the Dinka in Sudan:

In divination an attempt is made to specify a Power as the grounds of a particular human condition. Until its name is known, it remains as it were latent and undefined within the affective condition of the suffering individual, and action cannot be taken to remove it or propitiate it until it has been identified."
(32)

When the names are known, the mandiki (through the diviner) immediately proceed to give their new host their rules for "peaceful co-existence." He is told to erect a special altar (a forked pole) in his hut, where he must perform regular sacrifices to his mandiki. He is also ordered to smear himself with red ochre (ntumuri) as a sign of his new relationship, and is given rules of behaviour according to the nature of the mandiki.

This treatment obviously leads the patient into a completely new type of life. He will, as a rule, not be able successfully to combine the role of "ordinary" Tahwa with his role as 'possessed,' and after some time, he will probably emerge as a nyamu-soro ("mandiki-doctor").

(32) G. Lienhardt, Divinity and Experience, p. 148.

Spirits-of-revenge (mipfhukwa or Vanyamikwaxani)

The second type of spirit, not fully traditional in Tshwa life but now very common and important, is the so-called mupfhukwa (plur: mipfhukwa). It should be classified as a "spirit-of-revenge," closely connected with witches and with the influence of mandiki-possessed 'doctors' (vanyamisoro).

The name mupfhukwa is derived from the Tsonga verb ku pfhukwa (Tshwa: ku vukwa, or ku vuxwa = to be waked up), and indicates "a person who is being woken up," i.e., from the dead. Another name for the same phenomenon is nyamukwaxani (plur: vanyamikwaxani) of unknown etymological derivation. We will here use the shorter form mupfhukwa.

All Tshwa agree that the mipfhukwa originally came from the Ndau people. (33) This tribe has a reputation of 'specializing' in occult phenomena, and their influence became strongly felt during the latter part of last century. It is recognized that many traditional 'doctors' in Tshwa country are of Ndau origin. In the case of mipfhukwa, there is a clear connection with the similar "revenging spirit" among the Shona in Rhodesia. This is called ngosi (= danger?) and is reported to have the same general characteristics as mipfhukwa. (34)

The Mipfhukwa-system

Although commonly known, the belief in mipfhukwa is rather complicated, and it is probable that several of the informants were unaware of the "system" involved, even if they knew the different sides of the phenomenon. Through comparison of several informants' accounts, it has been possible to arrive

(33) Cf. mandiki, p. 42

(34) H. Gelfand, op. cit., pp. 69-70.

at the following picture, which I also have checked with my most knowledgeable informants:

There are certain mipfhukwa medicines (tisinyata wupfhukwa) obtainable from certain 'doctors,' which can be inserted under the skin. These medicines are said to be found mostly in the Vilanculos area, possibly because of close proximity to Ndau territory. In general, it is older men who seek this kind of medicine. Women are hardly ever said to "wake up" as mipfhukwa.

It is believed that a person cannot live long after having had mipfhukwa medicine inserted in him. "The medicine wants to work."

Treatment with mipfhukwa medicine is always done in secrecy, as persons seeking this always have a grudge against somebody else. Such treatment is regarded as a preparation for revenge which cannot be had during his lifetime. Furthermore, if this revenge should not hit the person concerned, it will reach his family or his group, aiming at its utter destruction.

The reason for revenge by way of mipfhukwa is most often witchcraft (wuloyi). It is said that a mupfhukwa comes to a certain village because someone of the residing Wid-Group has 'eaten his flesh,' i.e., killed him by wuloyi. After death, the person who has taken the mipfhukwa medicine now has the upper hand and punishes the relatives of his 'killer' until they pay him special attention.

Another reason for this kind of revenge after death is said to be theft, which has always been regarded in a serious light by Tshwa. A person having taken a blanket from somebody else was said to be afflicted by the owner coming back as mupfhukwa, and had to repay the value of the blanket several times over.

The first sign of a person's "waking up" after death is repeated sickness among his own living relatives. A diviner (nguguru) is then called in, and he may "catch" the spirit of the dead person in question. This spirit then speaks through the diviner, explaining that he is so-and-so, father or grandfather of the owner in the village, and that he has come back to them, asking them to take special care of him. He then requests a hut to be built for him in his former own village, and a young relative, usually a boy, is set aside to keep this house in order.

Subsequently, a small hut is built in the village, and the diviner indicates which person should be the care-taker. A sacrifice is then performed at one side of this hut, to bid a special "welcome back" to the waking relative. He has now come back to his village by "wangukuve," i.e., by ancestorhood, but he is not regarded as an ordinary nguluve, as these spirits normally do not make themselves noticed by these methods. It is important to observe that this spirit is neither called nor regarded as mupfukwa in his own kin-group.

When the sacrifice has been performed, the sickness in the family is expected to end, and the "owner" of the spirit, i.e., the present living leader of the kin-group residing in the village, may send the spirit on errands: "Go to so-and-so because they have taken things from us!" etc.

Thus this spirit-of-a-dead can be sent by his relative on sinister errands and cause havoc in another kin group, as well as go where he himself wishes to take revenge on his own evil-doers. It is also claimed that such a spirit can be used by certain valoyi (witches), but this seems to be a deviation from the normal "mipfukwa-system."

The Wikhukwa system has purposely been explained as simply as possible, so that the various connections may appear clearer. There are, of course, many deviations from this system, particularly in the Wikhukwa system. The Wikhukwa (witches) make use of Wikhukwa for their own purposes, but already have mentioned. Another deviation is the Wikhukwa that the people in the village from which the Wikhukwa is said to have come, may be somewhat surprised, as they have never heard of any spirit coming back to life by Wikhukwa (his Wikhukwa). The Wikhukwa system has been described.

Although this system may be intricate for the Wikhukwa of the Wikhukwa, he is not allowed to go to dwell in the Wikhukwa. When a person is rich and has many children, he must call a Wikhukwa and give him money to the spirit he calls for permission to use "part for this and part for that," and the Wikhukwa gives his reply through the mouth of the Wikhukwa. Another interesting observation is that an ancestral spirit who has come back to life is called the Wikhukwa of his descendants. The Wikhukwa is said to oppose attacks by Wikhukwa of his own people. This is certainly meeting fire with fire.

The Wikhukwa of the Wikhukwa practitioner is Wikhukwa. The Wikhukwa clearly emerges from the Wikhukwa as the Wikhukwa system. Undoubtedly a Wikhukwa practitioner is used to actual and potential assistance to the community plays its important role in the Wikhukwa beliefs in times of trouble.

Treatment in case of affliction by spirit-of-revenge (minfudken)

In a dissociated, 'possessed' state, the nyamusoro 'catches' the offending spirit, which proceeds to tell the enquirers -- through the diviner -- his name and home village. He also explains that he has come to take revenge on them and their kin-group, giving his reasons for this vengeance. On further questioning by the afflicted party, the 'caught' spirit-of-revenge states his conditions, on which he may be willing to renounce his right of further revenge.

Three items appear to be obligatory in these conditions: 1) a sum of money; 2) an animal to be sacrificed, usually a goat; 3) "the head of a person" (hloko ya munhu), meaning a girl from the afflicted kin-group, who will be dedicated to the spirit-of-revenge as his 'wife.' The amount of money may vary in each case. Informants mentioned sums in the range of R50. The girl to be 'dedicated' must leave her home village for a completely new type of life.

The nyamusoro then lead the party from the afflicted village to the alleged home village of the spirit-of-revenge (mpfukwa). On arrival, the party is said to be 'met' by the villagers. The nyamusoro then 'release' the spirit again, and he explains their purpose of coming. The structure of ritual then calls for the village leader to accept the money, and to sacrifice the goat at the side of the spirit's hut. The girl is simultaneously dedicated to serve the spirit in his own village.

Persons dedicated to a *supihutwa*

One of two persons may be dedicated as "care-takers" of the special spirit-hut. A boy of the spirit's own family is often set aside for this purpose. In such a person -- a relative of the spirit -- would be expected to be in close touch with the spirit, he would naturally have to be of the same sex as the spirit himself. The second person, however, coming from outside, is always of the opposite sex, as she is regarded as the mate of the spirit.

These "dedicated" young persons are charged with the upkeep of the spirit hut, keeping the fire going, etc. Generally, they sleep in the hut, but when the girl reaches puberty and normally is given in marriage to a person of the spirit's kin-group, she will stay in her husband's hut. These care-takers are said to lead normal lives, taking part in all activities in the village. Sometimes they dress in white and are smeared with red ochre (*iteqani*), but this seems to be an integral part of the ritual.

When such a boy grows up, or the girl was wanted by her family for a normal type of marriage, they could be "cleansed" in a special ceremony and replaced by someone else. This act, in respect of a girl, is described in another connection in this dissertation.⁽³⁵⁾

Wuloyi -- the craft of stitches

One power, strongly influencing the thinking and action of the Taba, is *wuloyi*. This word is usually translated "witchcraft," but I beg to draw

(35) See "Doxenip, sacrifice and sacraments," p. 146

the attention to the fact that "magic in general" is no synonym of wuloyi. It rather expresses "the craft of witches," implying that certain persons, particularly women, have special occult power which they use to the detriment of others, and, simultaneously to some advantage for themselves. Such persons are called valoyi (sing. noyi), which we would translate "witch" or, in applicable (few) cases, 'wizard'. Wuloyi, then, denotes the power, knowledge and activity of the valoyi.

The most harmless of witches' activities seems to be the removal of "the power and the taste" from food of various kinds. "A noyi (witch) can make so that we drink this tea and eat the bread but we won't feel satisfied, nor taste anything. Or, if we have meat and a noyi gets hold of it, we may eat but never get filled, nor will the meat taste anything. And beer treated by a noyi does not make you drunk at all ..."

This presumed power of removing the essence of food or drink has no connection with the poisoning of food, sometimes ascribed to witches. It seems rather to be in line with the alleged noyi activity of kutshivela ("to transfer power"). When, e.g., a farmer discovers that his own maize does not grow well at all, while his neighbour's fields carry a good crop, foul play is suspected. The assumption is then that the successful farmer is a noyi who has used his power of kutshivela to transfer the power of growth from a neighbour's fields to his own.

Persons thought to possess strange and sinister powers by which they may live an easy life at other people's expense are hated and admired at the same time. Thus, valoyi are said to be clever (va tlharihile), and the proverb "Votlhariha va hanya hi nyuko wa zipumbu" (= "The clever ones live by the sweat of fools") would indicate a grudging admiration for the

valoyi. They are selfish people who, through their special powers, can have more than their share of the coveted blessing of 'life.'

The word noyi may sometimes be used without any evil meaning implied, to indicate a certain person, who is particularly clever in some field. However, stories of suspicion and hatred against the one who seems to be getting more than his share are very common. There is the young man who was able to build a stone house before his own father could do the same. We hear of the man coming from the mines in the Transvaal with some money saved. As he buys cattle, sheep, and builds a better house, there is jealousy and suspicion among the neighbours, and evil consequences for the successful one. Even as they arouse suspicion because of their alleged wuloyi, other persons use the same kind of power to plot their destruction.

This is the inevitable explanation among Indians, when a successful person gets into trouble. He may get sick himself, or his wife has a spontaneous abortion, or the house gets destroyed by fire: wuloyi at work, of course!

This pattern would suggest that wuloyi activities mainly spring from two sources:

- a. Selfish desire to enhance one's own life at the expense of others;
- b. Jealousy against others when this success is denied oneself.

There is the mother-in-law sending sickness on her son-in-law because his wife gets nice dresses while she is not getting the same attention. There is the childless sister allegedly using wuloyi to kill her sister's newborn baby because of her hysterical jealousy. There is the old woman sending a festering sore on her grandchild, because its father did not give her a pound on his return from the mines....

How does a witch perform?

There are mainly two types of activity ascribed to the valoyi (witches), besides 'being clever' and the power of mutshile.

1. valoyi can fly by night. Several informants told of places where they had been attacked by some unseen person when in the dream. The woman is packing, or has a sore mark, after the valoyi's alleged attempt to strangle them. In another case, the woman came flying in the dream, only to convey a message about a sickness afflicting the sleeper. In all cases they were seen flying naked.

Their flying range seems to be rather limited. Three miles was a possible distance (indicated by well-known places). Two ten miles was considered too far for a valoyi. "She would not get back before sunrise."

A flying valoyi can enter into some other village and leave sickness or death as marks of his activity. "It is the valoyi's job to eat the flesh of people." It is easy to imagine that a sick person, whose body shrinks, can be thought of as "eaten" by valoyi. It is all done mysteriously, and help must come very quickly. So the diviner is consulted.

2. Valoyi can use animals as their servants. The most common animals in this respect seem to be the hyena, owl and eagle, but snakes and lions -- and even flies -- are mentioned. The hyena can be sent to catch goats, while the owl figures mainly as an evil omen. The sound of a xikhova or xikhovulu-huhu (owl) in the village when the sun has gone down puts an immediate scare into people and can be interpreted in only one way: there is valoyi in the village. Eagle-eats were said to have robbed certain fields of produce, while neighbouring fields (belonging to the alleged witch) were untouched by the intruders. and flies may be used to suck human

fat from sores, enabling the noyi to attain magical dominion over the person in question.

One variation of (2) is when the noyi herself is believed to change into a certain animal. Hyenas and owls were mentioned in this respect, and there does not seem to be any clear distinction between the two methods.

3. Valoyi are also believed to send certain sicknesses without any tangible means at all. This may be a slight variation on the main theme, as this type of valoyi is said to have a certain medicine inserted into their body so that any person who hits them or does any evil act against them, gets sick before sundown. "A va biwi" (= "They must not be beaten"). Such persons do not take revenge themselves, but sickness -- for instance some change in the pigmentation of the skin -- comes without fail, and there is no cure.

4. The least common activity of a noyi -- but also the most terrible one -- seems to be the use of poison in the food or drink of her victim. This kind of wuloyi is sometimes distinguished from the types mentioned above and referred to in English as "sorcery" as distinct from "witchcraft,"⁽³⁶⁾ but so far I have only found of this type among the Tahwa as one variation of the witch's activity.⁽³⁷⁾

Obviously such intricate beliefs in the power of witches have produced methods of how to deal with this potential threat. Some of these methods will be described later on in this thesis.⁽³⁸⁾

(36) Cf. J. Middleton, and E.H. Sioter, Witchcraft and Sorcery in East Africa, p. 2.

(37) Cf. also R. Levine, in same volume, p. 227.

(38) See "Pursuit of health," p. 107.

4. INTRODUCTION TO THE HISTORY

The historical picture

The Tonga and Shanga people had many contacts with people outside of their own area before the end of the nineteenth century. Eighteen-seventy-three was remembered as the "year of Daiman," i.e., when the diamond mines in Kimberley were opened⁽¹⁾ and even before that time migration had begun to plantations in the British colony of Natal.⁽²⁾

Undoubtedly, many were returning from their experiences in the South African mines or the sugar plantations in Natal, and much to relate of "the religion of white men," and some had already adopted the new faith. Still, the first experience of Christianity for many Shanga and Tonga must have been a second or third hand acquaintance with Roman Catholic practices as they could be seen in the town of Inhambane.

It is only reasonable to suppose that a few Tonga in and around the town of Inhambane had been baptized in the Roman Catholic church at the time when the first Protestant missionaries appeared in the region. However, it is an historical fact that no real mission effort had been started among the Tonga or the Shanga as Roman Catholics at that time.

-
- (1) H.A. Jansz, Life of a South African tribe, II, p. 305.
(2) When the British Governor of Natal, Shepstone, agreed to the immigration of Cetshwayo as King of the Zululand, in 1878, he negotiated a special treaty with him to facilitate the passing of Thonga from north to Mozambique through Zululand territory. (See Blackman, Analysis of a social situation in Zululand, p. 37, as quoted in Alto-Ferreira, O movimento migratório de trabalhadores de Moçambique e a África do Sul, p. 105.

It was during the last fifteen years of Nguni rule that the first Protestant missionaries entered the Tshwa area.⁽³⁾ The American Board of Commissioners and Foreign Missions sent some representatives from their settlements in Natal to investigate the possibilities of establishing new mission work further north, along the coast of the Indian Ocean. The first mission station in the new area was built near the Inhambane bay in 1883 at Mongwe, north of Maxixe, where E. Richards began work among the Tshwa people, who made their living mainly as fishermen. Other missionaries left the fairly safe coastline and ventured into the bush country west and north-west of Inhambane. Thus, W.E. Wilcox settled at Makodweni, and W.F. Jones was welcomed by the Tshwa chief Mukhambi to build on his ground near the live spring of water which was the Mukhambi lineage's sacred place (Mukhambi's Cestine).

Only slightly later than the "American Board" representatives, some missionaries sent out by the Free Methodist Church of America arrived at Inhambane (1885). The first were the Kelleys, and a young man, H. Agnew, who immediately proceeded to establish their work south-west of Inhambane, at a place called Komeni on the border between the Tonga and the Chopi. After some difficult years of constant malaria attacks and several untimely deaths among their missionaries, the work was largely left in the hands of a few African converts, being visited annually by Agnew who had then moved to the Transvaal.⁽⁴⁾

Towards the end of the 19th century, the Roman Catholic Church also began a new missionary

(3) See "The Tshwa and their environment," p. 4.
 (4) W.E. Hogue, *Dr. H. Agnew, a pioneer missionary*, pp. 55, 100, 124, 241.

activity, and in 1910 the number of Roman Catholic missionaries in active work in Mozambique had grown to 67. Progress among Africans must have been slow, however, as Padre António da Silva reports that the total number of confessions of all Catholics in Mozambique was 1,005 in the year 1909, compared to 1,500 confessions in 1883.

Also for the Protestant missionaries, progress was very slow, and disappointment mingled with lack of missionary personnel prompted also the "American Board" to withdraw its missionaries from the Inhambane region in 1874, sending them back to Natal. One missionary, Dr. Brown Richards, refused to leave the people at Inhambane, and during his rest period in America, he was accepted as a missionary of the Methodist Episcopal Church (not to be confused with the African Methodist Episcopal Church), under which he returned to Inhambane in 1893. During the years of missionary absence, however, the work had not stagnated. One of the earliest converts, Fizeo Navess, had taken charge of the little school and church at Makodweni and inspired somebody else to do the same at Gambine. Thus, Richards returned to a more hopeful situation than the one he had left three years earlier. In 1897, the Methodist Episcopal Church in U.S.A. sent more missionaries to Inhambane, and from the turn of the century the Methodist work grew steadily, centered around Gambine and Chicupe near Inhambane. (5)

As soon as African mine workers began flowing to Johannesburg, these African societies already at

(5) A. da Silva, "Estatística missionária de Moçambique," in *Boletim*, pp. 641-2.

(6) J.A. Sorensen, *Fortælling om Høstidstider i Inhambane*, pp. 7-11. Cf. Gonçalves, *Protestantismo em Africa*, II, pp. 117-118.

work in South Africa entered the mine compounds to preach and teach. The Free Methodist missionary agency established regular stations were in the compounds in 1877. This effort proved successful, particularly among the mine-men, and converts from different parts of the Johannesburg region contributed to the spread of Christian influence in their home country. In the beginning of the present century, Free Methodist missionaries were able to reside permanently, this time at Johannesburg, near Johannesburg, in the town of Johannesburg.

The Methodist Episcopal Church waited until 1917 actively to enter the mission work in mine compounds around Johannesburg. Since then its work has spread to a much larger area in southern Rhodesia, partly by means of men converted in the mines, and partly by new initiatives to extend the work in the areas north and northwest of Camby, until it now reaches the river Tlopi in the north and extends beyond Bulawayo and Harare in the northwest. The Free Methodist Mission meanwhile opened work in the Rhodesia area, at Bulawayo (1900). Another mission organization entering the same region because of its proximity to the work was the Transvaal Baptist Mission, which is now established in the vicinity of Bulawayo. The American Board Mission has also come back to its old field the same way and now has headquarters in the Harare and Bulawayo regions.

Even allowing for the "non-Methodist" denominations, it appears that the Protestant influence on the Tlopi has been fairly undivided. The Methodist Episcopal Church has received the major share of the work through the years. The "runner-up" is the Free Methodist Mission, which is completely separate from the Methodist Episcopal Church as far as organiza-

sation and administration are concerned, but the doctrinal roots of the two missions are the same.

The Methodist hymnbook of 1904 is now being used by all Protestant denominations in the region. The translation of the Bible into the Tswana language was done through Methodist missionaries, and the early establishment of schools and printing press contributed towards the overall influence of the Methodist Episcopal Church. As this work accelerated before 1900, Catholic missions were not active in the region. It is no wonder that the Methodist Episcopal Church is well entrenched in the life of the Tswana.

It is almost certain that as few purely African independent churches exist in Tswana country. The hundreds of thousands of men shuttling back and forth between the diamond mines and the home area have ample opportunity of getting into contact with independent churches as well as outside of mining communities. Still, the Methodist or Zionist types of churches appear to have very few representatives in the southern part of Bechuanaland. The early Portuguese policy of keeping splinter groups from spreading in Mozambique was probably worked as a strong deterrent. A few Zionist groups do exist, however, but beyond these, only one splinter group has emerged in the Tswana region. This is the "Igreja das Africanas" (the Church of the African Light), which broke away from the Methodist Episcopal Church in 1913 on racial questions. The Igreja das Africanas is still active in southern Mozambique as well as around Johannesburg, but it does not seem to have any important influence.⁽⁷⁾

(7) Administrator G. de Freitas, however, lists as many as 11 Zionist and 11 Zionist churches active in the province of Mozambique (J.J. Gonçalves, Impressões da África, I, p. 175, footnote).

...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...

In the ... of ... the ... of ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...

...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...

...the ... of ... in ...

In ... of ... in this dissertation ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...
 ...the ... of ... in ...

8) ...
 9) ...

was presented to the world. I will do this in the form of partly descriptive observations, based upon information from missionaries and Tabwa Christians, as well as my personal experiences.

Using the Tabwa Language

Without making a value judgment, it can accurately be said that, with missionaries of one type or another, white men entered the lives of the Tonga and the Tabwa. These men went to settle on the west side of the Indragiri Bay, not even some distance away from the sea, thus living closer to the Tonga than most valungs (see map) cared to do. They built their houses differently from the Tabwa hut, of course, and carried such provisions from places far away, but several of them came to live in the bush like the Tabwa did themselves, far away from other valungs.

From a Tabwa viewpoint, the strangest fact of all was possibly that these white men talked to the Tabwa in a different way. They tried to understand what Tabwa were saying in their own language, pointing here and pointing there, asking the eternal question, "Kini lexu?" (What is that?)⁽¹⁰⁾ even if the Tabwa thought that the white men pronounced their language in a strange way. It did not take very long before there was some real communication between him and the Tabwa people who were living close by. The missionaries married a couple of boys to help him in the house, and they also became his constant language interpreters.

Early on in the nineteenth century, Wilson, began the work of recording Tabwa into writing, and the little printing press at Fakodani, a few miles west of Suva, began producing the first Tabwa

(10) G.T. Rogers, pp. 111, 112, 113.

spelling charts. Rev. Busley then started the first school at Cambine, soon after the mission work had begun in the area. A few boys came to learn "how some lines on paper could speak their own language."

Teaching

Naturally, the written word was used before it was written in order to pass the Christian message across to the Tshwa around Maseru and Masodweni. Story-telling is still greatly loved by the Tshwa, and the call "karibani wa magagani" (approx.: Here comes a story!) stirs up an immediate interest in a group of Tshwa people. They did not mind listening to the new kind of stories that the missionaries had to tell. But there was strong resistance as missionaries made it clear that they wanted the Tshwa to leave their old ways and traditions and learn more about the central figure in the missionary stories: Jesus. The old gods were not accepted; they did not want to become gagani (white men). They found it difficult even for their sons when these wanted to go to school. One source of memory recalls that boys had to be employed for some odd jobs on the condition that they would spend three hours a day in school, learning to read. About 1860, however, it was reported by the same writer that the school at Cambine had more than a hundred boys from the villages in the neighbourhood. (11)

Even if many boys learned to read and write, it is estimated that only about ten persons became converted to Christianity during the first ten years of Protestant missionary activity among the Tshwa. Meanwhile, the New Testament was being translated

(11) J.A. Forrester, op. cit., p. 55; cf. W.F. Hooper, op. cit., p. 67.

to the Tshwa language by Gilcox and Richards, working together with the converts Tizora Navess and Davida Maperre. When the first edition of the Tshwa New Testament came off the press at Makedweni, this meant an entirely new world to all boys who were learning to read. It also gave a new impetus to the literacy work already begun. Tizora Navess was a born leader, and his influence over the boys at Mocodoene (as Makedweni now is written) and Casbine became decisive for many, and the number of converts started to rise. Several young men were sent to outside villages as evangelists. But their first task in the new situation was always to gather the boys around them to teach them to read. Thus many village schools were started, and it is probable that some chiefs regarded the opening of schools in their villages as a prudent and advantageous step for improving the relations with the white authorities.⁽¹²⁾ These schools became the focal points in the spread of the Protestant mission work among the Tshwa until the Portuguese administration in 1922 withdrew the rights of Protestant missions to have any schools outside of their already registered centres (seções). All primary education was then put into the hands of the Roman Catholic church, according to the agreement between the Vatican and the Portuguese State. Thus, we find that the observation of Pedro Antão da Silva is correct at least as far as the beginning of Protestant missions is concerned: "Their most important activity is the school and the printing press."⁽¹³⁾

(12) Cf. L. Anderson, Churches at the grass-roots, p. 67.

(13) Magalhães, p. 870.

Christian villages (mitalala)

In close connection with the village school, Christian worship was introduced into the village and Christian ethics were taught. Some people who insisted on the traditional Isha ways and customs moved away from the village. In other cases a group of Christians moved from their old surroundings and built a new Christian village. Such a village was often planned slightly different^{ly} from the usual Isha pattern: two rows of houses bordered upon the village "street," and the village leader's house and the little church (doubling up as a school building) were at the top of the row. This type of Christian village (mitalala) had disappeared long ago. But such close living together with other new converts must have had a tremendous importance for the spiritual and cultural growth of the inhabitants, as well as for their ethical discipline.

"In that time of yesterday, living in mitalala, it was not easy to do what one wished," said one informant, "because the Evangelist (village leader) was like a chief (Cabo). He knew his people well. He showed every one of us where we were allowed to build, and we had to build in straight lines like believers (!). It was not easy for a person in such a place to go to a traditional sacrifice. If you were not present in church (every night), he demanded to know the reason. But today it is easy to go astray, because we do not live like that any more ..."

In these Christian villages, missionaries encouraged tree-planting of many kinds and certain better agricultural methods, but it was not until in the 1930's that proper agricultural training began with a missionary specially qualified for this task.

Hygiene teaching

Hygiene was another primary aim of the Protestant missionaries. A medical doctor came to the field until 1910, but teaching of sores and treatment of elementary hygiene was missionary routine much earlier. Basiselele (cleanliness) became another important sign of a Christian village, and the message of digging latrines went literally along with the one of Christian faith. It is still quite common to hear a report on how many latrines have been dug during the last quarter, when the Methodist quarterly Conference is in session in some Tswana congregation.

It was along this line that the first leadership training courses at Tlokweng were started during the time of World War I. Young men were called in to Xikola ya Basiselele [school of cleanliness] and were taught how to preach and to teach the spelled along with hygiene. These courses gradually developed into proper general training courses, and teaching of hygiene was taken over by the medical personnel at the little hospital at Tlokweng and the medical outposts at Mafikeng and Mafeking (Mafeking).

It is interesting to note that at least one important Portuguese source sees the facts emphasized up till this point as signs of Protestant missionaries not being as anxious to save souls for eternity as Catholic missionaries are:

"The first ones (Catholics) are troubled by not being able to make more and more natives convert, as they have all have their souls' immortal destiny in view. The Protestant missionaries do not have this worry, as they concentrate more on the earthly life, even if only of time, to not forget the eternal life." (14)

(14) A. de Almeida, Alguns problemas sociológicos da África negra, p. 117.

Judging from the top priority presently given by Tshwa Christians to the religious value of 'eternal life,' it would seem that this observation is not valid as far as Protestant missions in the Inham-bane region are concerned. Evidently, practical teaching and the preaching about 'eternal life' went hand in hand in this Protestant venture. (15)

The Bible

Although schools and literacy work figure largely in the Protestant beginnings in Tshwa country, it is evident that the Bible has been the focal point right from the start. The aim that kept the work going of making Tshwa a written language was to "make God's Word, the Bible, known to the heathen Tshwa." This was also the ultimate aim of the literacy work. As soon as a pupil had finished the first Speller, he was introduced to the New Testament.

A tremendous interest seems to have been aroused by the printing of the first Tshwa edition of the Old Testament in the beginning of this century. Later it has been discovered that so many grave mistakes were included in that edition that it was impossible for the modern translator, Rev. J.A. Ferguson, to make a revision of the old edition. He insisted that a completely new translation was the only possibility. (16)

Nevertheless, the first Tshwa Bible was so loved that many Christians of the older generation refused to recognize the 1955 translation. The

(15) See "Death and eternal life," p. 251. Cf. W.T. Hogue, *op. cit.*, pp. 94-95.

(16) An entirely new translation of the whole Bible was prepared under the guidance of J.A. Ferguson and printed in 1955 by the American Bible Society.

Bible became known as "The Book" (Bhuku). Now, the new translation has been taken over completely, and the Bible is a best-seller among Tshwa, particularly in the Transvaal mine compounds, even if the price corresponds to two days' wages for a young worker!

Protestant missionaries were, however, not satisfied by only producing the Bible in the Tshwa language. They also taught the Bible very diligently. Village leaders were urged to use it regularly in morning and evening worship in their villages, and sets of Bible lessons soon appeared in the little monthly paper kuca ka lixo (= The Dawn of the Morning) which was distributed free of charge. This paper has been issued regularly since 1904. Several books and booklets were produced during the first quarter of this century, and with very few exceptions they dealt with certain books or themes of the Bible.

As the Protestant missions to the Tshwa operated in a spiritual climate that was -- at least on the white side -- entirely dominated by the Roman Catholic Church, this general emphasis on the Bible is easy to understand. Undoubtedly, Protestant missionaries felt as their bounden duty to "open up" the Bible to people living in a country where it still remained a closed book, except for priests. (17) Roman Catholics were taught to base their absolute security in the Holy Catholic Church. Protestants, on the other

(17) This is also the point at which Protestant Missions have been criticized by official sources. José João Gonçalves, in Protestantismo em África, says: "As we speak of simplification we do not mean adaptation. They (the Protestants) practice this, too as we have shown, but we can indicate one phenomenon in which Protestantism did not use adaptation, and whose consequences certainly were not brilliant: the indiscriminate distribution of Bibles, not adapted to the pre-existent African mentality. Out of this have surged different manifestations of an Africanized Protestantism." (Vol. II, p. 248)

hand, based by tradition their absolute security on the Bible, believed in as "the infallible word of God." Thus, the doctrine of verbal inspiration of the Bible guided Protestant missionaries in their teaching. No theological or historical criticism of the Bible was taken into account, as most missionaries to the Tshwa would have classified themselves as "fundamentalists." Even ^{though} a few missionaries of the Methodist Episcopal Church in the past and several more at present could not be counted into the fundamentalist group, the main doctrinal influence in the Tshwa churches is still very definitely based upon the doctrine of verbal inspiration.

The doctrine of sanctification

As the Protestant influence on the Tshwa has come almost exclusively from Methodist sources, the Methodist doctrine of sanctification has played a significant role in forming the Christian faith among these people. Strangely enough, the Discipline of the Methodist Episcopal Church from the time of the beginning of Methodist missions in Mozambique has no doctrinal statement on this issue, which has through the centuries been regarded as the key Methodist doctrine. However, the 1968 "Book of Discipline of the United Methodist Church" has the following statement on "Sanctification":

"We believe sanctification is the work of God's grace through the Word and the Spirit, by which those who have been born again are cleansed from sin in their thoughts, words, and acts, and are enabled to live in accordance with God's will, and to strive for holiness without which no one will see the Lord."
(18)

(18) Book of Discipline of the United Methodist Church, 1968, p. 47.

Sanctification is the belief that the whole personality can change and become totally engaged in a constant effort of living according to God's will.

It seems that this central Methodist doctrine had at least three direct consequences for the missionary teaching among the Tshwa:

1. Entrance into the new faith could only be through the gate of conversion, which preferably should be according to a certain pattern, including coming forward to the place in front of the pulpit for prayer and tearful repentance.

Evidently, it was soon clear to missionaries (and to some Africans) that this method could be used without any "change of heart" being involved. A few quotations from H. Hogue's journal concerning his labours in the mine compounds illustrate this point:

"One meeting 118 present, and one with 40 present. Second meeting a Church preacher present. Meeting mostly of Zulus. Sixteen came forward. Do not know how many were in earnest ...

... from 12 to 5 p.m. at Knights Deep, about 75 present. Good time. About a dozen forward. Three were in earnest, Ionahe especially so ..." (19)

While we are not told what criteria were used to determine how many conversions were "in earnest," it is obvious that such 'dedication' early became a form associated with Protestant worship. (20)

2. The new convert had to make an absolute break with his old life. Missionaries taught that everything belonging to Tshwa customs and traditions

(19) W.T. Hogue, *op. cit.*, p. 222.

(20) Cf. "Worship, sacrifice and sacraments," p. 135.

was "inspired by man" and would have to be left unconditionally. The convert was required to look at his old personal and social life as evil. (21) Immediately he should move to a 'Christian village,' so that his transfer from one way of life to a completely new one could be facilitated.

3. Great emphasis was placed upon God's commandments, "The Law." The new ethics was completely to replace the pagan one, and the ethical field was soon to become the most important one for Tswana Christians. What we now see as a strong legalistic trait in the whole Tswana Protestant community may partly be a negative reflection of the emphasis on the doctrine of sanctification, although the problem of legalism in Christian churches appears to be a continent-wide issue. (22)

Preaching, Sacraments and place of worship

Most elements of worship were transferred directly from the American scene. As in many other African countries, hymns were translated by missionaries from the English language, and American tunes were introduced. According to the Overseas Methodist tradition, the worship service lacked strict liturgical order, the main elements being sermon, singing and prayer. On some occasions, testimonies from believers (non-preachers) became part of the service. Possibly, such unstructured "free worship service" was

(21) Such an attitude condemning everything African is deplorable from a modern point of view, but seems understandable in its contemporary setting. One pioneer missionary, cut off from outside contact, felt that "all was new and wild and strange to him, and they saw no human beings day after day but uncivilized Africans in their disgusting and repulsive appearances." (J.T. Hogue, *op. cit.*, p. 50.)

(22) See "Law, sin and salvation," p. 222.

particularly stressed in this country, in contrast to the Roman Catholic elaborated liturgy. Free prayer (i.e., not bound to any written formula) became a significant part of Tshwa Protestant worship. Even such liturgical elements as candles or robes were, in the beginning, frowned upon.

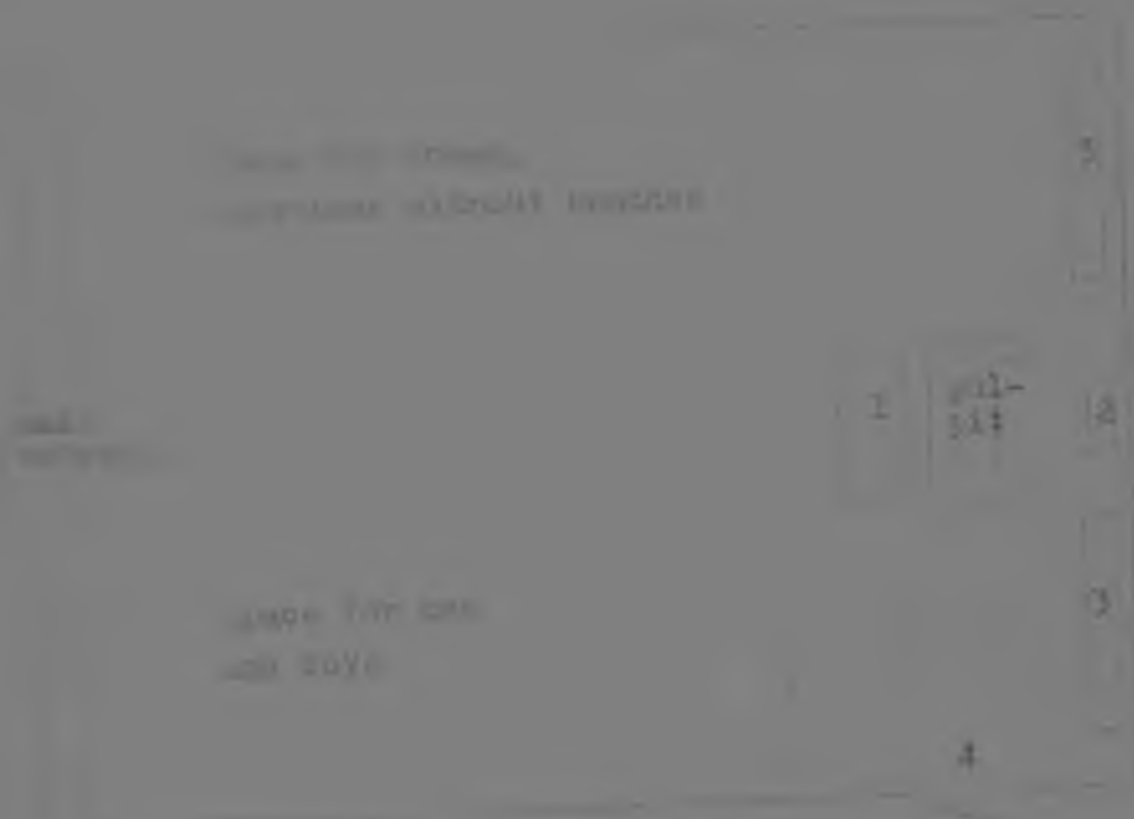
Preaching was from the start the most important part of the Tshwa Protestant worship service. Very soon after the conversion of the first Tshwa man, some of them were allowed to 'preach.' It must soon have become the goal for many men within the Christian community to reach the stage when they could call themselves vaxumayeli (preachers) and have the right to stand up in a local meeting to open the Bible and give his exhortation based on the Bible verse he may have selected. The vaxumayeli also had the right to lead the group in prayer and took, consequently, a similar position as the "Great-one of the lineage" (Wahombo wa lixaka) in approaching the supernatural Powers.

The pulpit had the most prominent place in the simple church buildings that were constructed in the Christian Tshwa villages. It was called xilubelo (= "place where you pay your respects to the chief"; from ku luva).⁽²³⁾ Quite possibly, this name was attached to the pulpit because this was regarded as the place from which the "Word of the Lord" went out to the congregation, and consequently, this was also where repentant sinners came to bow down "before the Lord" and ask for forgiveness.⁽²⁴⁾

- (23) Junod mentions that the main hut in a village, i.e., the headman's own, where "people come to pay homage to him," is called shilubelo. H.A. Junod, op. cit., I, pp. 312-313. Cf. chapter on "Social world of the Tshwa," p. 9.
- (24) Note that the Tshwa word for "Lord" is Hosi, which literally means "Chief."

On Sunday, the pulpit was put at the
 end of the short wall of the church, indi-
 cating the direction of preaching. In front
 of the pulpit was a table -- instead of an altar --
 on which the preacher's Bible and
 hymn book were placed. Occasionally the elements of
 the Eucharist (Hupit x Hupit) would be arranged.

Diagram of interior arrangement
 of a small Protestant church



1. Table, sometimes used for Lord's Supper
2. Chair for preacher
3. Bench for village elders
4. entrance for preacher and village elders

Evidently a few traditional Tshwa customs were considered safe enough to be kept, as the seating arrangement in a Tshwa rural church from the beginning seems to have followed the principle of the Tshwa hut, where the left side as one enters is regarded as the women's part, while the right hand side belonged to the man.⁽²⁵⁾ If there were benches in the church, these would be used mainly on the right hand side, for the men, and the Christian Elders of the village had their honoured place on both sides of the preacher, facing the congregation.

In keeping with the principle of non-liturgical worship, the importance of sacraments was, in general, toned down. This was the case particularly in regard to the Lord's Supper, which was served only occasionally. This loss of affairs may have been caused, at least partly, by the lack of persons allowed to administer the Lord's Supper, as for many years nobody else but ordained missionaries were permitted to do so. It could also be another sign of a conscious desire to distinguish Protestant worship from the sacrament-dominated Catholic liturgy.

Nobody was accepted as member of the Free Methodist or Methodist Episcopal Churches without baptism, and this sacrament was from the beginning preceded by a lengthy period of instruction. This instruction was soon taken over by African leaders, who thus rapidly attained the responsible position of having to judge whether or not a convert would be ready to receive baptism. When an ordained missionary was visiting the neighbourhood, the local African evangelist presented his baptismal candidates for the sacrament. Sometimes such occasions developed into mass baptisms, where as many as 160 persons might be

(25) cf. H.A. Junod, *op. cit.*, I, pp. 138, 187.

baptised in one day. (26)

To conclude

Protestant Christianity presented itself to the Tshwa with the three-pronged approach of "Preaching, Teaching and Healing," which has been used in mission situations all over the world.

Practical methods, as teaching literacy and providing small booklets in Tshwa, were primarily used by missionaries in order to gain the confidence of the people. The preached message was connected with the daily life in the villages, through lessons in agriculture and hygiene. Special efforts were made to get close to the Tshwa by always using their language, and African men were early used as assistants in preaching and teaching.

The ultimate aim of the missionaries to proclaim the Christian message and to establish Christian congregations was the keynote in all work. This is where some peculiarities of Methodism became conspicuous, for instance in the doctrine of sanctification, the great emphasis on preaching, and the organization of converts into 'classes' led by lay preachers or "exhorters." In the absolute demand on the converts to renounce all traditional customs and beliefs, Methodist missionaries shared the common attitude of their day.

Through the years, many tens of thousands of Tshwa have responded to the message primarily proclaimed by the missionaries, and become converted. Churches have been established, and Africans are now in responsible positions of leadership. The election in 1964 of the first Tshwa bishop within the Methodist Episcopal Church of Mozambique. Bishop

(26) J.A. Persson, op. cit., p. 53.

Escrivão Zunguze, represented an important step in this process.

On the other hand, there are undoubtedly many thousands of Tshwa who once became Christians but have left the Church again, and many others who would barely count themselves as nominal Christians.

As we in the following chapter ask the question what prompted many Tshwa to transfer their loyalty from their traditions and customs to Christianity, we will further on seek to find out what kind of attitudes and beliefs were fostered among the Tshwa through this type of presentation of Christianity, and possibly why many after a superficial acquaintance with the Christian faith have turned back to their traditional beliefs.

5. WHY DID THEY BECOME CHRISTIANS?

We have seen how Protestant Christianity was, and is being, presented to the Tshwa people. Now we must find some answers to the question why many of these people chose to become 'believers'.

Before the introduction of Christianity, religion had never been a matter of choice for the Tshwa. Worshipping the ancestors and obeying the laws purporting to come from them was as natural heritage to the Tshwa as the soil on which they walked. Sacrifice, agriculture, hunting, child-birth, laws - all these were part of their ntumbuluko (= "that which developed by itself", i.e. "nature", or "creation"), and as such they were all factual matters, never subject to 'belief' (xikholwa). New features brought into the religious and ethical system by the diviners (e.g. Ndaou teaching about revenging spirits) were easily assimilated, as they were only additions, fitting snugly into slots apparently needing to be filled.

To be sure, foreign cultural influence had already been felt, particularly by those men who had gone to work in Natal or Transvaal. (1)

But Christianity challenged the Tshwa to make a clean break with their entire spiritual and cultural heritage, to take the step away from their ntumbuluko and become 'believers' (xikholwa). Surely, this was like walking into the unknown. And still some Tshwa made the change.

What prompted the first Tshwa Christians to take this step? Was it the reputation of white people to be powerful, that helped arouse a curiosity, particularly among young men? Andersson's observations about beginnings in the Congo give an affirmative reply to this question. (2) Did thus non-

(1) See further pp. 6 and 7.

(2) E. Andersson, op. cit. pp. 48-51.

religious motives figure largely in early Tshwa conversions, or did some Tshwa become Christians because the religious or ethical message of the missionaries struck a responsive note in them?

True answers to these questions are not to be found, and speculations will not lead us very far. Let us therefore look at the present picture, trying to establish the reasons why some Tshwa of today become Christians.

A sample of 20 informants does not give enough background for any statistical calculations. Furthermore, all my informants were men, and I am therefore not preterring to know what would prompt Tshwa people in general to want to become Christians. Nevertheless, I submit that my fieldwork among Tshwa men in mining compounds, stretching over a period of almost 10 years, gave me ample and intimate insights into these men's way of thinking, which may be of greater value than any statistics in this field. My 20 years of missionary work among the Tshwa may also be mentioned as a supplementary source of information.

Nine of my informants grew up in Christian homes, i.e. at least one of the parents was Christian, and there was a definite Christian influence in the home-life. The eleven informants coming from a non-Christian background did not experience any conscious Christian influence at all in the parental village, except in two cases. Of these, one had a brother who had become Christian, while the informant was still a child at home. In the second case, the parents - in spite of being non-Christians - urged their sons to go to school, and one elder brother had already gone before the informant.

As we are not aiming at statistical accuracy, I have also recorded the answer given by the only one among my informants who never became a 'believer'. He was once 'very close to joining the Free Methodists' but was kept back as he became 'sick because of mandiki'. His reply is recorded as No. 8 in the table below.

Reasons for wanting to become Christians

	Christ. home	Christ. influ- ence	Non- Christ, home	Total
1. "Wanted to read and write".	3	(1)	1	5
2. "Prompted by a dream".	4			4
3. "Attracted by peace and fellow-ship" (warua ni wahiengeli).			3	3
4. "Prompted by parents".	3			3
5. "Attracted by Christian sing- ing".			2	2
6. "Prompted by a cer- tain Bible-verse".		(1)	1	1
7. "Was healed at hospital".			1	1
8. "Attracted by hygiene".			1	1
	9	(2)	11	20

Comments on "Reasons for wanting to become Christians"

1. "Wanted to Read and Write"

It is not surprising that "reading and writing" tops the list of reasons. Many Tshwa still find it difficult to distinguish between xikhola (= faith) and ikola (= school). Teaching how to read and write was the first regular activity of Protestant missionaries among the Tshwa. Today, the crowds of boys and girls going to school in Mozambique are, of course, just as eager to master these primary tools of learning as young people in other parts of Africa. In most cases, 'going to school' also means a specific connection with the sponsoring Church, either this is Roman Catholic or Protestant.

In the mine compound in the Transvaal, the rooms where Christians are allowed to stay together are often referred to as "school". And every illiterate newcomer to such a room - at least a Protestant one - is taken on as a new pupil in the small literacy class.

Reading and writing are seen as the key to the new life described as Xilangu. This word with the same stem - lungu as in mulungu (= white man) comprises all that is connected with the white man's world. Or - in other terms - it takes in everything that does not belong to traditional Tshwa culture. Above all, x'lungu means a world where money is of primary importance. Therefore, it is perfectly understandable if young men, who have missed their chance of going to school during boyhood and, consequently, cannot normally expect well-paid jobs, see the literacy class of the Protestant mission as a glimmer of hope.

Does this produce "school Christians", i.e. persons who agree to church going, etc., in order to obtain certain educational advantages?

(3) See chapter on "How Christianity was introduced"
p. 65

To my knowledge, no statistics are available following up the careers of boys and girls who have finished their primary studies at the Methodist school at Castine or Chicopee. Indications are, however, that a large percentage of these students do not maintain any vital interest in church activities once they have left school. It is possible that the obligatory church attendance for school attendance is somehow connected with this subsequent loss of interest.

In the same manner, several young men undoubtedly enter the "Christian" road with the explicit purpose of only learning how to read. They may even have been conditioned by their fellows against any further acceptance of "the Father" (xikhoiwe). Thus, there are some who go back to non-Christian roads when the First Speller is finished. On the other hand, many continue in the Christian group.

The factor of academic and education as an important attraction to Christianity is by no means limited to the Tewa. Probably, this factor accounts for a vast number of Africans becoming Christians all over the continent. This has found by Anderson in the Congo, ⁽⁴⁾ and Taylor says that "to a great extent (Christianity) has become . . . classical religion". ⁽⁵⁾ Thus, from a Christian point of view, this factor may have ambiguous value, potentially creating the impression that the Christian faith is a necessary gate to higher education but without true relevance in ordinary life.

d. "Prompted by a dream"

In the traditional context, ancestral spirits (lingulove) can send their will through dreams. This may express itself as a warning, a prophecy of a coming calamity or

(4) H. Anderson, op. cit., p. 43-4

(5) J. Taylor, The Tribal Vision, p. 11

sometimes of a blessing.

Dreams have an immediate, undoubted importance to Tshwa. What they have seen in a dream is just as real as anything seen in broad daylight. Furthermore, the dream is often conceived of as an order, a basis for action.

The situations of the four informants stating that a dream prompted them to accept the Christian faith all suggest that some period of preparation had preceded the actual decision. The "Christian dream" did not come out of the blue. It was rather a culmination of some kind of personal crisis. Two examples may suffice:

a) A man was living in a "heathen" compound room, in spite of having had several contacts with the church in the home village. One night he dreamed of home and suddenly he heard a voice calling out: "You must believe! You must believe!" The next day he moved to a "Methodist" room in the compound. Later, another dream made it clear to him that he should become a pastor.

b) "In 1949 I experienced what it is to be visited by God. It was in Witbank, in the mine hospital there. I was one of those involved in the train accident at Water-val-boven.

Then I fell asleep. I felt like God showed Himself to me.... not that I saw Him but I understood that He was very near and He told me: 'You shall see Him. You will see your family again. Now you shall sing the song No. 230' (6).

After that dream there was no doubt any longer. I had been living in a "Christian" compound room but just hanging on. Now I knew that I could never leave the faith!"

In spite of their previous contact with the Christian Church, these dreamers were still hesitant about becoming

(6) No. 132 in "Tshwa le Ivangelii", the Tshwa Methodist Hymn-book:

A Jehova nza ku lava
kuranza ka wena.
Nzihe moyo wa ku Basu,
Nza wu lava lezi.

O, Jehova, I want
to do Your will.
Give me the Holy
Spirit,
I want it now.

Christians It is not clear, however, whether the push provided by the dream created stronger faith or stimulated a decision for fear of possible consequences.

The decisive urge experienced in the dream seems to indicate that dreams continue to play an important role among Christian Tshwa as in the traditional community. This is borne out by many dream tales coming from my informants. Orders given to a person through a dream - either it is "to pray constantly" or "not to hesitate about going back to the mines" or "not to drink water from a cup of enamel" - are all taken seriously and must be immediately carried out. (7)

3. "Attracted by peace and fellowship" (kurula ni wathienzi)

A. Kurula ("peace")

The Tshwa word kurula means "peace, quietness". In connection with a person it can get the meaning of "poise".

What an outsider sees of kurula in the Christian group, attracting him to enter it himself, would appear to be some quality that in his mind distinguishes Christians from the group he presently belongs to. Naturally, this depends to a large extent on his personal experience. A critical event - e.g. a bitter conflict or some treatment that seems unjust - may inspire a person to seek for an escape. The Christian Church might, in such a case, seem to offer a suitable alternative.

Objective evidence in this respect is difficult to isolate. In a compound, negative reasons for leaving the

(7) Cf. Sandberg's description of the role of dreams among Zionists and other independent churches. H. G. Sandberg, Santa Trinita in South Africa, pp. 266 - 275.

traditional surroundings are more explicit than positive ones for joining the Church. Statements like "I was afraid of being beaten", "I wanted to keep my things from being stolen", "I did not want to be forced to buy liquor", or "I wanted to escape from being used as a woman" have all been made by several young men, asked to explain why they transferred to a "Christian" compound room. The fact that the four activities mentioned are actively censured in most Christian groups suggests the reason why the Christian room was chosen as the alternative.

However, these four statements should not be seen as proofs that all these activities escaped from are integral parts of traditional Tshwa culture. Drinking, certainly is, even if new types of liquor introduced through contacts with Europeans may have new effects on the users. Fighting, particularly in connection with drinking, is not uncommon in traditional context, even if fighters may be driven away from the place of sacrifice, in order "not to destroy the mhamba" (act of worship). But theft and homosexual activities were certainly severely censured also in traditional society.⁽⁸⁾ More common stealing nowadays must be partly blamed on modern individualistic concepts concerning belongings. Finally, the absence of magical threats against the potential thief has removed a psychological bar against stealing.⁽⁹⁾ The reasons for more liberal attitudes among compound dwellers towards homosexual relations may, in addition to the unnatural, long separation from female company, be sought in the absence of effective moral sanctions from the kinship group.⁽¹⁰⁾

(8) A. Mucombe, op. cit. p. 1. 34

(9) Ibid.

(10) See section on "Some aspects of social life in mine compounds", p. 27, for difference between 'incapacitation' of some compound dwellers and red Xhosa in East London, for whom rural sanctions of kin still exert great influence.

...the word mandiki, mandiki possession is an essential element of traditional life. (12) Another is witchcraft allegations, sometimes resulting in bitter feuds between accusers and defendants. Some informants gave examples of families having been completely split up because of witchcraft accusations, supported by the alternative, arising from a diviner. As it is recognized by those that mandiki spirits can be exorcised through Christian prayer, (13) and that Christian persons are accused of using witchcraft against anybody, the Christian community would seem peaceful in comparison.

It is therefore, probable that the kurula (peace) which exists was never into Christianity is, at least initially, by the absence of such harmful elements (traditional or not) and a positive expectation of any Christian virtue.

Conclusion ("Fellowship")

In turning to the part of this 'attraction' expressed by the word mbungu, we are not only dealing with the initial stages of social interaction for becoming Christians. We are also dealing with a large number of informants who as the main reason in the interview "what is your regard as most important in Christianity?" is to, therefore, necessary to penetrate this concept in greater detail.

The word mbungu is mbungu translated "fellowship". In this is a better sense than, the real meaning of mbungu is to be found in the concept of mbungu as a social relationship and that social relationship, according to what the informants say, was into the concept.

Etymologically, the word mbungu is derived from the root mbungu, meaning 'to be together', indicating a group of people who are in a relationship but making it into a creative experience. A group of mothers, for instance, had

(12) See further in "Some Traditional Beliefs", p. 42.

(13) See description of such Christian "exorcism" on p. 10.

wuhlengeli, particularly if they went out to kill a lion that had been harrassing herds in the vicinity, or to kill an elephant which had destroyed the fields. Women working together to brew beer for some ceremony had wuhlengeli and people joining forces to defend themselves against a common enemy had a strong sense of wuhlengeli. (13)

As many words of the Tshwa language have been infused with new shades of meaning because of their being used in a Christian context, it may be raised that the same has happened to the term wuhlengeli. (14) There is also the possibility that persons outside of the Christian community would recognize certain elements of Christian wuhlengeli, which insiders do not regard as of decisive importance. We will scrutinize this concept in several different categories, in an attempt to approach some kind of definition of Christian wuhlengeli.

a. Wuhlengeli as situational association for social purpose

On becoming part of a Protestant Church, a large sector of the traditional social life was cut away for Tshwa Christians as they were now forbidden to take part in kinship functions and communal gatherings.

Ordinarily, social association among Christians means getting together in church for worship and singing, and conversation before and after the meeting. The non-liturgical form of worship probably contributes to a more intimate interrelation between partakers than a strictly liturgical ritual. Lay participation in preaching, exhortation and testimony, especially in the small rural church, provides for a kind of

(13) A. Mucombo, Nkutsulani wa Matimu ya Vatshwa, p. 18 ff

(14) "Bandla", originally meaning "men's meeting place" is now the term for "church"; xiluvelo, meaning "hut of village headman", is now "pulpit"; kululama, meaning "being straight" is now "righteousness".

social relationship which may be reminiscent of gatherings around the evening fire in the men's place (bandleni) or for the women at the place of the pots (khombarini). (15)

There have been few positive efforts to create any special forms of social fellowship within the Church, except in work among children and youth. One young leader for girls, speaking in a conference, expressed the need for exploration in this field: "When we girls have our meetings, we play and dance with the boys and girls as in the past. But we must do this, and we must get guidance of how to play and dance in a Christian way".

Even if informants confirm that "frequent gatherings in a peaceful and joyful spirit" make a distinction between Christian and traditional association, it would appear that such situational companionship is no decisive factor in constituting Christian wuhlengeleli. On the other hand, situational association among Christians may possibly be characterized by a certain spirit because of wuhlengeleli experienced at a different level.

b. Wuhlengeleli beyond the boundaries of kinship belonging

From a Christian (and "western") viewpoint, it is often seen as a positive value that Christianity helps a man break out from the limitations of his kin-group. From another angle, however, such broken kinship relations may cause continuing friction and conflict within the Tshwa community.

If purely social criteria are used, the only reason for wanting to break away from the kin-group may be the desire to flee from its mutual obligations. A man may want to "live his own life", free from the responsibility that kinship-belonging imposes on every member of the group. This process, facilitated by modern communication and city life, is fairly well known also among the Tshwa. Persons availing themselves of this opportunity are aware that "they reject certain of their

(15) see "social world of the Tshwa", p. 24

traditional obligations, thereby losing rights associated with them".⁽¹⁶⁾ But modern economic activities provide the possibility of rejecting one's kinship responsibility without starving to death. The group member may come to regard himself as economically independent at least as long as he can be useful to the modern economic system. If he, meanwhile, has been "washed off"⁽¹⁷⁾ by his kin-group, such independence may land him in serious trouble when he is too old to work.

I suggest, however, that these are not the criteria for Tswana Christians to break away from the kin-group. There are examples of such escapes, but, on the whole, it appears that Christian Tswana retain a sense of social and economic obligation towards their kinsmen, although the kin-group acknowledged by them may be reduced in scope. Frequent visits of Christian mine workers to their non-Christian kinsmen in different compounds are an indication that kinship wahlangeli still plays an important part.

Nevertheless, when kinship relations, in general, stop short at the religious question. Several informants mentioned pressure on them from relatives to take part in kinship funerals, e.g. sacrifices to ancestors. As they had refused, friction had ensued. One informant stated explicitly that "he had had to move away from his father's village because of constant pressure from his father's side. Thus, when a religious criterion is applied to kinship wahlangeli, the Christian usually breaks away. Consequently, he will have to seek fellowship in the group which determines his way of action.

Some informants spoke highly of the "non-kin" Christian fellowship which "does not look at the issue of a man", but accepts a person irrespective of kinship belongings. However, any association which builds its existence solely on the break-up of other groups may suffer because of its negative

(16) E. Banton, "The Structuring of Social Relationships" in A. Southall, (ed.), Social Change in Modern Africa, p. 123

(17) Cf. E. H. Meyer, Peasants or Tribesmen, p. 132

foundation. It can only become of positive value when supplied with new norms and purposes, which are accepted by members as valid. (18)

The peculiar situation of the Tshwa Christian seems to be that he is caught in a loyalty crisis between the social aspects of his kinship structure which he accepts, and the religious ones which he renounces. As, from a traditional viewpoint, these two aspects are inseparably intertwined, the Christian is probably seen as a rebel, who has rejected his kinship-belonging in toto. That this implies in a community which has not yet provided any alternative social structure - except what can be found in a system foreign to Tshwa culture - can only be vaguely perceived.

It appears, therefore, that a wuhlengeli ("fellowship") solely built on the criterion of being beyond the boundaries of the kinship structure is, at least at present, a destructive force in Tshwa society, potentially leading an individual into a crisis of identity. I would judge that, in a wider context, the so-called process of "de-tribalization" is, therefore, potentially destructive in a social sense, as it is primarily a negative phenomenon. It is conceivable that the ethical flux - resulting i.e. in criminality of an extent totally unknown in traditional society - which now seems to characterize parts of the urban African population in Southern Africa, is rooted in the declining importance of kinship structures and sanctions.

From this viewpoint, then, the Christian wuhlengeli, unbound by kinship limitations, seems primarily as an escape, a substitute for the fellowship normally found in the kinship group. What distinguishes this wuhlengeli, however, from the process of "de-tribalization" is that new norms accepted as the foundation of association have obviously infused a positive spirit of relationship, providing a sense of new identity and belonging to a larger reference group which is defined both by ethical and social criteria.

(18) Cf. E. Banton, op. cit. p. 115

In a mine compound group, e.g., where, in general new association patterns have to be formed, it appears to be easier for persons of different kin groups, and different tribes (although within the same language group), to relate within a Christian context than in a non-Christian one. Through long association neighbourliness ordinarily evens out tribal or lineage differences also between non-Christians, (19) but in a situation where men continuously see new-comers from other clans or tribes entering their own community, (20) have observed that frictions quickly arise.

Tribal frictions are certainly not completely absent in the Christian compound group, either. But, as the "non-kin" rule has, in fact, been translated into a positive virtue, the Christian community appears to have a certain social machinery at its disposal, aiming at bridging tribal differences. The weekly joint compound services of Christian men from all of Southern Mombasa - irrespective of denomination - have probably been a strong positive force in this direction.

In spite of the professed non-tribalism, it would seem that whenever outside of the language group is extremely limited even in the Christian compound community. As long as in the case of indigenous communities, contacts made across language barriers during work hours seem to have no bearing on Tshwa Christians' leisure activities. Living arrangements in compounds seem to encourage this attitude. (21) It is, in fact, probable that the Church group in a compound is seen as a kind of amakhaya group, although the terms of reference are what they are in the case of "old" compounds in London. (22) A man entering a compound with the claim that he belongs to one of the Churches active in his home region will,

(19) See "Tshwa social world", p. 23

(20) At least once a week, "new-ones" arrive to the compound from various tribal areas.

(21) Compound social life is described on pp. 26-29

in general, have no difficulty in getting accepted into the company of the respective Church group in that compound. Obviously, the language is here important for association, but the essential "home" criterion is the Church, offering wuhlengeli even to persons previously unknown to other group members but manifestly conforming to the accepted norms and behaviour of the group.

It thus appears that Christian wuhlengeli is mainly based on accepted norms as criteria of association, rather than on any "breaking away" from kinship belongings.

c. The wuhlengeli of group action

It remains to see whether the interpretation of the word wuhlengeli implied by the etymological derivation from the verb ku hlengela, "to do together", is valid in relation to "Christian fellowship". Traditional examples of this interpretation were related in the beginning of this section.

As a positive sign of wuhlengeli ("fellowship") among Christians, working together, for instance in building churches, was quoted by some informants. Missionary activity like providing agricultural training at Cambine, hospitals and schools, are other examples of what Christians do together. Another popular example of wuhlengeli is the recent building of water-tanks in a part of Tshwa country (Wuronga) where drought always has presented a problem. What makes this project especially significant is the fact that it was wholly initiated and mainly financed by Tshwa Christians. These examples of Christian wuhlengeli indicate the possibility of working together to improve the community.

Frequent group activities in the work of worship or lessons (both of religious and practical nature, e.g. hygiene) add to the sense of belonging among Christians. In several local situations, both in compounds and in the home country, in-groups of Christians develop with very frequent mutual associations, mainly connected with joint church activities. Such

developments depend largely upon efficient local leadership.

It is well known that joint action of certain groups of people can provide a strong sense of togetherness and mutual satisfaction. This often finds expression in the term "team spirit". Thus, women brewing beer together have a sense of joint accomplishment which binds them together, at least temporarily. Likewise, the members of an orchestra often experience the joint satisfaction and joy of performing together. Nevertheless, this is fundamentally a situational association, which does not necessarily carry any obligations at all outside of the temporary joint action.

This is the point where I find that the joint action of a group of Tshwa Christians differs, at least in principle. It could be said that Christians joining forces in building water-tanks act in this way because they have wuhlengeli. The "fellowship", then, is not situational, generated by the action, but the action may be seen as a fruit of the group feeling. No doubt, this wuhlengeli, manifesting itself in creative group action, is one aspect of the "attraction" on people outside of the Church.

d. wuhlengeli of the group apart

For the outsider, joint action, peaceful togetherness, and even what may be interpreted as certain freedom from kinship obligations, are probably the elements of wuhlengeli ("fellowship") among Christians that appear attractive. For a person on the inside of the Christian community, however, these values may be conceived as growing out of the common bond between all those who have manifestly accepted the same conditions and norms of association. In other words, the principal criterion of Christian wuhlengeli is one of identity with the group apart. It follows that the bond of fellowship within such a group is strengthened in accordance with its members' degree of acknowledging their common norms and goals. But, in spite of these potential differences in degree, the essential bond harks back to the voluntary act of joining the group.

The same criterion can be applied, for instance, to a political group with specific, partly ethically determined conditions of membership, and well defined goals. Such groups all tend to be totalitarian, embracing all aspects of life, into which the group attempts to apply its ideology.

The distinction between such different "groups apart" lies in the character of the norms of association, which, in the case of Christians, can be assumed to be fundamentally based on the message of Christian faith and ethics. However, as Banton has pointed out, "these norms can never be entirely new. If they are to have meaning, they must have some relation to people's experience of the world".⁽²³⁾ Consequently, Christian wuhlengeli among Tshwa is different from the corresponding "fellowship" in a European group of dedicated Christians, because of each group having selected those elements in Christianity which are particularly meaningful in its own cultural context.

Nevertheless, we know as a fact that the norms of association within Tshwa Protestant Churches have, to a very large extent, been determined by forces outside of Tshwa indigenous culture. We may, therefore, reasonably expect tension and even conflict as long as such dual selection determines the standards of the group.

I find it clearly demonstrated that such conflict exists among Tshwa Christians, sometimes even making group members apply a double standard to their actions. This is one expressed reason why many baptized Tshwa never take the step into "full membership" of the Church. If they did, and subsequently fell below the professed standard, they would be punished by a loss of status, usually reversing them to the position of "baptized, preparatory member".

Several areas of such tension and potential conflict will be investigated in the following chapters of this dissertation.

(23) H. Banton. op. cit. p. 11

e. The Christian group partly replacing the kin-group

Undoubtedly, it is in the case of serious accidents, sickness or death, that wuhlengeli ("fellowship") among Tshwa Christians best expressed itself in meaningful action. These are critical periods for the afflicted individuals, in which the kin group traditionally is closely involved. (24)

As Africans nowadays are often far away from their kin, the latent threat of such crises may build a feeling of insecurity. This is probably the main reason why Burial societies have become so popular among African people in cities. (25) With not enough kinmen around, one has to trust one's own financial contributions to a common fund, in order to secure a proper burial.

The serious accident most frequently mentioned by informants is fire and consequent total loss of belongings. As fire is often considered to be caused by witchcraft - or, in the case of lightning, by Filo, the Sky Power (26) - people outside of the kin group would naturally be reluctant to take any measures. However, three different cases of fire, where Christians from large areas had assisted with gifts and cash donations, were mentioned as examples of wuhlengeli. These Christian Tshwa probably interpret the accident in the same way as non-Christians, but different attitudes towards action in such cases distinguish the two communities from each other. (27)

The inter-relation between Tshwa traditional medicine and modern medical treatment will be dealt with in the chapter on "Pursuit of Health". In connection with the concept of wuhlengeli among Christians, particularly women, I refer to the well documented custom of visiting the sick for prayer and

(24) See "Tshwa social world", p. 1.

(25) P. Mayer, op. cit. p. 1.

(26) See "Traditional Tshwa beliefs", p. 33.

(27) . Vilakazi, ulu transformation, pp. 25-30.

assistance. (28) This custom is well borne out also among men in mine hospitals. Several informants mentioned special prayer vigils for sick Church members. Examples where the Church group had collected money to help a sick person to the hospital at Chicouque were mentioned by two informants.

When death occurs in a Christian Tshwa family, kinsmen do their share, but they usually leave it to Church leaders to perform the funeral. It is customary for Christians of various denominations to attend the burial or one of their number, irrespective of kinship belonging, or status. In cases of death of Christian men in a mine compound, the whole group of Christians from Southern Mozambique are called upon to attend the burial as well as a memorial service. It is also customary to make a collection, partly for the 'funeral tea', partly for the family of the deceased.

f. Conclusions

It is not true to say that all dealings between Christians are done in a spirit of genuine mutual solidarity. Strife and envy have their place also in the Church. But, the fact clearly emerges from the material, that Tshwa persons within a Christian community, having to some extent rejected the obligations and responsibilities of the kinship group, become members of an enlarged reference group, in which new criteria of solidarity are used, giving rise to increased sense of solidarity and responsibility. This new sense of mutual solidarity, based upon jointly accepted standards, is the main element in Christian solidarity.

4. "Prompted by parents"

It is clear from the outset that informants giving the information that they "were prompted by their parents" to join the Church, are about those who grew up in Christian homes. They were baptized as infants and became accustomed through the

(28) J. A. Dube, The role of the church in an urban African society, p. 17-18 and Vilakazi, op. cit.

years to church services, singing and peace and fellowship". For such persons, the positive features that make Christianity attractive to non-Christians may not shine as brightly. They seem often to concentrate their attention upon the negative features of the Church, e.g. the moral code that in Tshwa context tends to be extremely legalistic. This may be one strong reason why many Tshwa growing up in Christian homes seem to lose interest when they become old enough to decide for themselves.

In the case of one informant, the lure from the "outside" became too strong for him. Not far away from his home, "modern dancing" (kukana bhangi) to the sound of gramophone records was arranged every Sunday. Week after week he and his brothers slipped away from the house after dark. In spite of being beaten severely by their father, (a Church lay leader), when their escape was discovered, they persisted. To get money to pay for each tune, they took eggs from the family's hens which they sold to some whites living nearby.

Finally, the brother got such a hard beating from their father that they were "afraid of getting killed" if the beating continued. So they relented, and my informant adds: "Father promised me a new white shirt if I joined the Methodist youth group. So I did. And I am happy now that I left the dancing, because there are so many who get venereal diseases at such places".

It is open to question whether such prompting produces permanent results. In the selected case, the person in question began to see that there were certain side-effects involved had he insisted on his own way. In other cases, however, too strong prompting undoubtedly has produced opposite results, particularly among young people who have had some educational opportunity.

7. "Attracted by Christian Singing"

The difference between traditional singing and Christian singing is clear. Christian songs in the Protestant sphere have been

...the transmission and adaptation of ... songs and hymns. These "songs ... (Evangelii)", as the Methodist Episcopal ... have become firmly integrated into ... together with the little booklet ... the most po- ... they ... to all Jamaican ...

... of a choir at ... groups sometimes present ... are almost exclusively ... picked up via a visitor ... Christian group. So far, no real ... in African style has been ... It would rather appear that there exists ... efforts among Christian ... e.g. the shila ... as rhythmic instrumental ... as a rattle ... at least in Methodist Episcopal ... to contribute to a ... of foreign tunes, especially as far ... but they have not yet been allowed ... in church context.

... three informants that ... against ... the highly appre- ... that was the main ... that it was the ... the Methodist Girls' School ... and helped him ...

"Presented by a certain Miss Mary"

This has to be classified as a special case, even if the

decisive power in a particular Bible verse had some connection with the "dream cases". There a certain song figured largely, and in another dream the text Romans 13:1 was said to be the turning point for the man in question.

In this case, the informant "found the faith under a table. I was sitting with some other boys, idly talking, when I suddenly caught sight of a slip of paper under the table. It was a torn page from the New Testament, where only one verse, Matthew 7:19, was readable. I read it, and was amazed at the Great Person in the Sky who is able to burn all the male trees (those which do not bear fruit!) in the forest. I wanted to know more about that Great Person. So I went to the 'believers'.

Undoubtedly, this man had had some previous Christian influence, in spite of growing up in a non-Christian home. His brother had become a Christian, and the very fact that he could read indicates that he had had at least some contact with a school.

I do not exclude the possibility that this is the "conversion story", which this person, who later became a pastor, has told many times in sermons and testimonies. This does not decrease the value of the information, but it is possible that the form of the story has been influenced by many tellings.

7. "Was helped at hospital"

As far as I know, no statistics are available to show how many persons might have been influenced through a mission hospital to become Christian. Possibly, there are many who see the Christian message "materialized" in the care and cure at the hospital. This could be a kind of interaction between preaching and teaching in the home village and the curing of the sick.

However, it probably does not take long before the patient locates the curing power exclusively in the white man's medicine, or the skill of a certain physician rather than connecting it with the Christian message. It will be found out that

any hospital can be of help to sick people. (29)

In this actual case, the informant had lung TP. His constant coughing made him consult a diviner, who advised him to divorce his wife, as she was killing him through wuloyi (witchcraft). As he hesitated, somebody advised him to go to Chicouque mission hospital. There he got treatment, and as he was getting better he was told severely by the doctor that he had to stay away from drinking liquor. As he "knew his weakness in regard to liquor", he decided to go to church regularly, "so that the believers should help him keep sober". Obviously, he had kept his intention alive.

The medical advice given in this case had no specific Christian flavour. What prompted this informant to become converted was his immediate need to change company at home, as drinking is an integral part of Tshwa traditional society. The Protestant Church was the suitable alternative, as drinking is severely censured both in the Methodist Episcopal and the Free Methodist Churches.

3. "Attracted by Hygiene"

"I saw that the Christians had a different way of washing themselves"; is the literal quotation from the old informant, who was the only one in my actual sample, who did not take the step away from his traditional way of life. He stated that he had been "close to join the Free Methodists" at a certain time, but he had remained a non-Christian.

Hygiene teaching was started early by missionaries among the Tshwa. (30) Even today, it is a regular feature of a 'quarterly conference', comprising delegates from several villages, to hear a report from the 'Hygiene Committee' (Ko-meti ya Basiselelo), indicating the number of latrines built

(29) The role of clinics hospitals will be touched upon in the chapter on "Trends of Health".

(30) See "How Christianity was introduced", p. 68

during the quarter, or the state of the water holes in the vicinity. In some areas, the Church groups have obtained special shovels, designed to dig the deep holes necessary for this purpose.

The Church has also kept teaching the Tshwa that water for drinking must be boiled before use, to help prevent some sicknesses, notably bilharzia. Teams of teachers, sometimes sent out by the Church to visit villages, have continuously advised both Christians and non-Christians how to help themselves to prevent malaria, bilharzia, or other intestinal parasites, as well as TB and venereal diseases. A major effort to prevent the further spread of bilharzia was made some years ago at Cambindi, when facilities for washing and bathing were built completely separated from the infested river. Against smallpox, large vaccination campaigns were early performed by personnel at mission hospitals. (31)

Another feature of the work for better hygiene is the teaching of child-care, and providing opportunities for mothers to rear their children under hygienic conditions. Maternity wards early became part of mission hospital establishments.

Even if the man in this actual case did not become a Christian, it is highly probable that many Tshwa through the years have been attracted to Christianity because of hygiene teaching. But it is just as certain that this factor is of small importance as an "attraction" nowadays, as modern hygiene, also in the Tshwa area, has lost its character of being a "Christian speciality". Ideas of hygiene have been spread through teaching in mine compounds, as well as in all types of schools. Government-built maternity centres are a

(31) Unfortunately, it cannot be claimed that work to prevent bilharzia and intestinal parasites has met with great success. There is evidence that bilharzia is spreading in the area, and one authority estimated that 80 percent of the population are infected with some kind of intestinal parasites.

common sight along roads in the Tshwa area, and toilet hygiene is getting common in all types of villages.

This modern spread of hygiene does not alter the fact that Tshwa Christians consider cleanliness, both personal and communal, as a sign which necessarily must be part of Christian living.

6. THE QUEST FOR LIFE

The wutomi concept

"Suddenly I realized that I had forgotten to tie my wutomi around my hips. When I awoke after the bath, my heart began beating hard, I felt sweaty and almost dizzy but I rushed back to the river to search in the grass. How I jumped for joy when I found my wutomi and I promised myself never to forget it again".

The informant, now a Christian man, vividly recalled the memory from his childhood, indicating in his manner of telling how important a certain amulet had been to him. It had been his wutomi, his "life", given to him by a n'anga (diviner and/or herbalist) during a period of sickness.

Wutomi is the highest good for the Tshwa. This word is usually translated "life", "health", but it also includes everything that the Tshwa experiences as good for himself, his family, his crops and domestic animals. Loss of wutomi most commonly means loss of health. But it is as true that a healthy man who has lost his only donkey or who sees his wutomi wither away under a librated man, will feel that his wutomi is not what it ought to be. When sickness comes to his family, his wutomi is gone once more, and quarrels and enmity with people close by are other factors lowering the wutomi.

Wutomi, then, has (at least) the following integral factors:

- a) Healthy life for self, family, kin group and neighbours;
- b) Procreation, and fertility of fields and domestic animals;
- c) Appropriate status increase and right relationships;
- d) Appropriate increase of property.

By extension, certain agents which are deemed to further or create "life" are also given the name wutomi. This is why the above-mentioned amulet was called by this term. Similarly, the testicles, from which life-power issues, may be called wutomi.

It seems almost impossible to capture the wutomi concept in some English word. "Life" covers it partly, and we may come closer to reality by the qualification "complete life". But we have not yet come to the heart of the matter.

I judge that the Tshwa expression wutomi is similar to the Luba concept which inspired Placide Tempels' expression "vital force". (1) The principle for enhancing wutomi is probably the same as what Edwin Smith called "dynamism". (2) Neither of these two commonly used terms, however, seem satisfactory as far as the Tshwa are concerned. It is interesting to observe that some African specialists on religions, writing recently on African customs and religion, are questioning these terms in a wider context. (3)

I do not intend to enter into a full discussion of these terms, but a few observations may be relevant: It appears that the expressions "vital force" and "dynamism" give a mechanized picture of the life at least as far as the Tshwa are concerned. It is particularly difficult to see the person, the person being a "force". (4) Rather a person is participating in a life-stream or life-power, tapping the resources available to all human beings, and to all nature. This life-stream coming from the Sky-Power (Palo), and existing in ntumbuluko ("Creation" or "Nature") ideally upholds and permeates through the person to his descendants. There is also constant inter-relationship between the life-stream in the person and in the part of nature to which he is connected. A few quotations from the Tshwa may illustrate this:

(1) Concerning 'right relationships', see pp. 14-16 and p. 225 ff. for details.

(2) P. Tembo, Shona Philosophy, p. 20

(3) E. Smith, (ed), African Ideas of God, p. 72

(4) J. Nbiti, African Religions and Philosophy, p. 16, footnote, also V. Mubanga, "Vital Participation" in Dickson-Williams, (ed), Religious revelation and African beliefs, p. 137, footnote, and p. 145, footnote

(5) P. Tembo, op. cit., p. 20

"If the tree of sacrifice withers, my wutomi is gone in that village."

"My wutomi is low when it happens that my goats or cattle die."

"If a man commits adultery, his sin can make his little child sick."

In view of this, it seems that Vincent Mulago's expression 'vital participation' conveys most distinctly the principle underlying the quest for wutomi also among the Tshwa. (6)

Maybe the analogy of an irrigation system can somehow clarify this idea of 'vital participation':

- a. The life-stream of ntumbuluko, originating with Tilo (The Sky Power) is the main river, available to all nature;
- b. Every lineage has its canals to this great stream of life, the ancestral spirits being the "flood-gates".
- c. The individual participates in the life-stream solely through the canal of his lineage and of the lineage 'owning' his land;
- d. The stream passes through him to his descendants, etc;
- e. Life (wutomi) is increased through other connections;
- f. Life is decreased by the siphoning of canals, either man-made or natural, or through other beings' diverting life to themselves.

'Sufficient Life' is sought

The main reason why 'dynamism' does not fit well into the picture, is that it seems to imply a forceful, creative, and continuous development, which is, in fact, the opposite of the quest for life that I have found among the Tshwa.

In reply to the daily question "wa hanya ko?" ('How are you?'), i.e. 'Do you live?', a Tshwa person says "wa hanya" ('we live'), or "wa nana" ('we have it', i.e. wutomi). Often he adds two words "a hi wa kumbi" ('we haven't got them').

(6) V. Mulago, op. cit., pp. 157 ff.

i.e. any complaints to tell.

The point in these examples is that Tshwa customarily do not use expressions denoting "good health" or "perfect condition", as a European may do. The ideal state for the Tshwa is the normal, the sufficient (wutomi gi eneleko).

Too little of wutomi means a negative "no-life" (wutomi gi hava). In fact, people often say "we have died" (hi file), when they experience 'no-life'. On the other hand, it is not true that too much of this coveted substance (wutomi go tale) is not welcome at all. It is rather a curse on a person being told that he has got "much life". "Hyawutomi nzi vuvu" ("You of / much / life!") is a serious curse, which may be used to a hated, unsociable person, particularly if he seems unduly successful. Significantly, an interchangeable expression for wutomi (hanya) is vuvu ("liver", from ku hanya = to live).

In the Tshwa quest for the standard, the normal, the sufficient, excesses in any direction are thus regarded as evil. The following diagram may help to make the wutomi concept clear:

"Much-life"
(wutomi go tale)

Too long
Too much
Too successful and not "helpful"

Sufficient
life
(wutomi gi eneleko)

Health for self, family, kingdom,
neighbours
Prosperity, and fertility - riches,
unity
Appropriate status increase; right
relationships
Appropriate increase of property

"No-life"
(wutomi gi hava)

Sickness and death
Pervasive drought - hunger
Accident and loss
Wrong relationships; loneliness

We do not know exactly why the traditional Tshwa do not put a restraint on life quest for life. It may be surmised that it was caused by a constant feeling of insecurity. Life was -

and is - a continuous battle against sickness, loss and death. Under such circumstances, it would be foolhardy to challenge the superhuman power by striving to attain a higher level than the 'sufficient' one.

Nevertheless, I would judge that the quest for unity of the group living together was the main reason for desiring 'the normal', 'the sufficient'.

"The Bantu believe firmly in a vital communion or lifebond which creates solidarity between members of the same family or clan... Every effort must be directed to the preservation, maintenance, growth and perpetuation of this common treasure. The pitiless elimination of everything which hinders this end, and the encouragement at all costs of everything which furthers it: this is the last word in Bantu customs and institutions, wisdom and philosophy". (7)

To preserve such a unity, it was imperative that no one should have more than his appropriate share.

In this quest for 'sufficient life', the Tswana are in line with several other African peoples, for instance the Akan of Ghana, of whom it has been said:

"There is a traditional pattern of life, itself the summus bonum, sanctioned by spirit-ancestors and gods, expressing itself in clan institutions and behaviour patterns... The appropriate approachment, the necessary arbitration, the status quo, itself the perfect pattern for life. Thus there is no concept of spiritual progress towards, nor of gross spiritual decline from a higher ideal, but only a traditional pattern of life to be maintained through piety and obedience". (8)

'Piety and obedience' played a primary role also in the life of the Tswana. As the ancestral spirits were seen as "flow-keepers", regulating the flow of water into the lineage, it seems to follow that the "right relationships" sought for

(7) V. Kufalo, op. cit. pp. 139-140

(8) G.A. Williamson, Akan Religion and the Christian Faith, p. 141. See also J.D. Krige, "The Lovedu of the Transvaal" in African Worlds, p. 56

as part of the goal of 'sufficient life' were also instruments to reach it. After investigating whether Christianity has changed the traditional ideal of 'sufficient life' we will probe into the role of Isawa worship in attaining this ideal.

Tshwa Christian Search for Life

From a Christian viewpoint, the Isawa quest for wutomi seems to indicate that the concept "abundant life", ⁽⁹⁾ playing a prominent part as an ideal in Christian teaching, would be most acceptable to Isawa. This concept is usually interpreted by missionaries as the infusion of ethical strength, courage and joy through a new relationship to God through Christ. For a Christian, 'abundant life' opens new possibilities, through "the vigour of its health, the splendour of its adventure, and the exciting possibilities it puts within the reach of anyone". ⁽¹⁰⁾

Two informants, however, gave no indication of understanding that the concept 'abundant life' had the above-mentioned implications. In general, I found the following two interpretations of this concept:

a) A "new way of living", expressed partly in negative terms as "leaving the old system and behaviour", partly as "following the way of Christ". This way of living was seen as advantageous from a practical point of view. As new insights into "how to live properly" or "to take care of children" were included, several informants referred to this new way of living as a "better life" (waibet na mukama).

b) The most common view was that 'abundant life' means "life after death", or "life without end" (waibet na yinzukwana).

To probe further into the Isawa Christian understanding of the 'quest for life', it is relevant also to investigate the

(9) John 10:10

(10) Interpreters' Bible, Vol. III, p. 625.

Tshwa interpretation of Jesus as Saviour. In the Tshwa language, the word Saviour has been translated Muhanyisi. This term is derived from the causative form of the verb hanya (= to live). Thus, Muhanyisi means 'The One who causes to live'. In secular connections, the same word may be used of one saving another from drowning. I have also heard it applied to a doctor, who helped a certain person to regain health.

What does it mean to Tshwa that Jesus is Muhanyisi?
Two different informants answer:

"To begin with, I say that He was the one who gave His life for our sakes, so that we receive life. Our ancestors lived their lives, too. But there was nothing further which they looked forward to. When a man died, he was finished. They just thought he was dead. But we believe that when we leave this world, we have another life which we receive because of the coming of Jesus. Thus, when we speak of Jesus as Muhanyisi, it means that He gives us eternal life".

"He does not give us the kind of life which shows itself when we walk... I believe He gives us life in our spirits... in what we do... in accordance with what He showed us (of better living) while He was on earth".

While statements from the majority of my informants agree with the first of the above quotations, the second must be regarded as an exception. It is quoted here to indicate the range of interpretation of "life" in Tshwa Christian context, and - from a Christian viewpoint - the degree of understanding the 'new life in Christ'. It should be noted that also here the concept of "a better life" (matomi ya chukwana) is referred to.

The designation of Jesus as Saviour (Muhanyisi) is generally understood as lifegiver after death. My material leads me to conclude that Jesus is not believed to play an important part in most Tshwa Christians' quest for life here and now.

It therefore appears that this quest for life 'here and now', also among Christians, is essentially cast in traditional

... the ... ideal remain
as the fundamental ...

However, ... about 'sufficient life'. It should
be realized that we have isolated and frozen an institutional
ideal, which necessarily has a number of individual variations.
Within the framework of traditional Tshwa society, these were
... But with modern freedom of movement, and
... of modernization and Western civilization,
the range of variation inevitably increases. It would appear
that we are left with a more fluid ideal, continually being
modified as further outside influence infiltrates the Tshwa
way of life, both for Christian and non-Christian.

It is probable that intensive research on this very point
would reveal greater modifications in some areas than in
others. ... variables like age, status, education and
sex would also indicate different patterns. With the material
at hand, however, and certain interpolations from my experience
among the Tshwa, I can only point out some tendencies, and the
individual ideal at the Christian should be sought somewhere
along the willing scale between the traditional ideal and the
... of such modern trends. We are again reminded that,
in this matter, the traditional ideal is still the point of
reference as to 'the Highest Good'.

In the main, four trends of change should be noted:

1. There is a change of emphasis, which stresses certain
aspects within the 'sufficient life' ideal at the expense of
others. Less emphasis is being put on kinship relations out-
side of the immediate family, and, on the whole, the tradition-
al concept of 'right relationships' between persons is reced-
ing from its place of primary importance.

The modification 'appropriate' concerning status increase
and the increase of property are conditioned by the necessary
... rights, age, and traditional concepts

of propriety. Influence of education and outside modes of living is rapidly corroding these values, with the consequence that increase of status and property is now more commonly expected on grounds of education and efficiency.

Barrenness remains a curse also among the majority of Christians, while the stress on a large number of children as a particular blessing is becoming weaker!

2. "Much-life" has become more attractive. The line between 'sufficient life' and 'much-life' is much thinner than it used to be. Undoubtedly, traditional sanctions on too great a success still play a role. But less importance of kinship relations and 'right relationships' has established a trend towards individuality. There is also a tendency to measure success more in materialistic terms.

3. Certain 'modern' additions are being made to the traditional ideal. These are described in rather diffuse terms, as "modern living", "better ways of taking care of the family", etc. Education is another important addition, mainly expressed in straight academic terms. 'Practical education' has not yet been given a similar status value.

4. Religious additions: While 'right relationships' between persons are being deprived of their primary importance, the relationship with God has been given a decisive position. Even if this mainly comes to the surface in a negative sense, as "Sin against God", the significant fact is the stronger religious emphasis on the 'right relationships' concept. The social aspect of this factor now applies more to relations with persons within the Church than outside, even if neighbourliness is a highly praised Christian virtue. However, such 'right relationship' does not seem to have the same moral urgency as in a traditional context. For the Christian, the 'moral imperative' is now the "Law", ⁽¹²⁾ and the decisive

(12) Various referred to as 'The Law of God', 'The Law of Christ' or 'the Law of the Church'.

relation in this respect is with God and/or with the leaders of the Church, in so far as they are considered custodians of "the Law of Christ". (13)

Judging from the emphasis made by informants, the most important religious addition to the traditional ideal of wutomi is the Christian concept of 'eternal life'. It is open to question whether this should even be included at this point, as it falls, in fact, completely outside of the scope of the traditional 'sufficient life'. I have reason to believe, however, that this concept figures largely in the thinking of many Christian Tshwa as part of the 'better life' (wutomi ga chukwana) which they look for in Christianity. (14)

The important religious value of this Christian concept is further borne out by statements from other Bantu-speaking peoples. Monica Wilson says about the Nyakyusa Christians:

"The supreme attraction, mentioned again and again as the reason for conversion, is 'There is life'.... and it is life in a world to come rather than 'more abundant life' here and now that is spoken of". (15)

It is evident from the above that new values present themselves to a Tshwa person becoming a 'believer', either as additions to the old, or as alternatives. Great potential differences appear between the poles of 'better life' and the traditional ideal of 'sufficient life'. A conflict between the traditional 'vital participation' and more modern (Christian?) stress on the role of the individual, is already recognized in the decreased importance of the kin group outside of the immediate family.

(13) This whole matter will be developed in detail in the chapter on "Law, Sin and Salvation".

(14) 'Eternal life' as a Tshwa Christian concept will be taken up for detailed discussion in the chapter on "Death and Life Eternal".

(15) M. Wilson, Communal Rituals of the Nyakyusa, p. 187

Even recognizing these differences, however, it must be remembered that these two groups among the Tshwa, Christians and non-Christians, are both embarked upon a continuous quest for life (wutomi), and that their basic values are quite similar.

In our continued investigation of "The Tshwa Response to Christianity", we will attempt to make clear in which areas and by which means this wutomi is being sought, and to what extent satisfaction appears to be obtained, either through traditional or Christian methods. This part of the dissertation will follow these lines:

a) The next chapter, "Worship, Sacrifice and Sacraments" deals with the establishing and keeping of right relationships with superhuman powers through ritual action, both within traditional and Christian context.

b) The chapter on "Pursuit of Health" probes into traditional concepts of sickness and cure, particularly 'social' causation and healing, in comparison with modern and Christian concepts.

c) Moral norms and social relationships are investigated in the chapter on "Law, Sin and Salvation", penetrating into the ontological reasons of the conflict between traditional and Christian ethics.

d) The final chapter connected with 'quest for life' goes into the matters of "Death and Life Eternal", indicating how the Christian concept of 'eternal life' has, to a large extent, changed attitudes towards death and accompanying taboos.

7. WORSHIP, SACRIFICE AND SACRAMENTS

Traditional worship

In the traditional Tshwa society, right relationships were both preconditions for and integral parts of 'sufficient life' (swutshi or eneleko). Such relationships had both a social aspect and a mystical (religious) one, even if the Tshwa did not consciously make this distinction. In their minds, the tinguluve (ancestral spirits) were as much part of the lineage as their living descendants. However, the ways of relations with the tinguluve were distinct from other social associations.

As the tinguluve were regarded as beings who could approach the Sky Power (Tilo) with requests, it follows that they were channels for the life-power issuing to the whole ntumbuluko ("Creation", "Universe") from the Sky Power. Men were part of this ntumbuluko as well as soil, plants and animals. Broken relations with the tinguluve could result in the clogging of the life-stream canals, with "no-life" as the result. (1)

Right relationship with tinguluve had a moral aspect as well as a ritual one. The lines governing the lineage, including taboos (ntshingiso) as well as behaviour patterns, were regarded as common heritage from the ancestors and had to be obeyed. Their ritual part of 'right relationships' will be discussed in the chapter on "Law, Sin and Salvation". It is the ritual aspect of relations with the tinguluve that interests us for the moment.

The question whether the ancestral spirits were actually worshipped, or only approached as part of the kin-group has lately stirred up some discussion. Some African writers

(1) See pp. 106-107

flatly deny that ancestors ever were worshipped, maintaining that all worship was directed towards God, even in the cases where the ancestors were actually approached. (2) Others indicate that "the idea of mediation where the ancestral spirits are mediators between Ngwanulu (God) and men, is very imperfectly developed. The spirits to be worshipped are the ancestral spirits".

In the case of the Tshwa, some informants have been quick to point out that the worship bestowed upon the tinguluve was really meant for Tilo (The Sky Power). On the other hand, there are those who claim that their people "did not know Tilo at all" and that all worship was aimed at the tinguluve.

My standpoint is that the concept of tinguluve as mediators between men and the Sky Power is well established among the Tshwa. However, the living, active religion of the Tshwa was directed towards their tinguluve, and I see no reason why this attention should not be called "ancestral" (ancestral).

Unity of traditional worship and sacrifice

For the Tshwa, worship and sacrifice are one and the same. Many would approach the tinguluve unprepared. While "concrete worship" is a suitable term for this fact, whether it is a question of what is to be killed, the concreteness is the point.

One expression of such concrete worship is the simple depositing of some tobacco "at the head of the sleeping place", or a deposit of food at the ground before eating. Such customs are not universal, as far as is known, but they seem to represent personal worship in traditional context, however restricted only in the case of older men.

(2) J. Mbiti, African religions and philosophy, p. 26

(3) J. Mbiti, African religions and philosophy, p. 27

Nevertheless, joint worship is the heart of traditional Tshwa religion. Whether the group comprises kinsmen only, as at sacrifices because of sickness, or the whole community is gathered for a rain sacrifice, the superhuman world is approached together. Unity among the worshippers is also important. On some occasions, it is necessary to confess all grudges and quarrels, so that they "do not spoil the sacrifice". At all times, fighting is forbidden at a time of worship. The unity of worshippers is upheld also in a negative sense, as persons knowing that they are ritually unclean are trusted to stay away from the sacrifice, which otherwise would be spoilt through their impurity. (4)

There are two general categories of sacrifice: kinship rituals and communal ones. One kind within the first category may be called "rites of life crises", as the need for them arose from some impending danger within the kinship group. The other kind of rite within this same category of kinship ritual are the "memorial rites" held to commemorate some departed kinsman (so and recently died, or the whole host of ancestral spirits. Communal rites always refer to agriculture and the need of rain and growth. I therefore suggest for them the name "rites of the soil". There were also other sacrifices having to do with war, hunts, etc., but these have no bearing on a comparison with present Christian rites, and will, therefore, be left out of the discussion.

Rites of life crises

Whenever sickness, severe accident or death occur in a family, the diviner has to be approached. The result read in the divining bones clarifies to the Tshwa the reason for the actual misfortune. If it is divined that a certain nguluve (ancestral spirit) is angry, the bones will also tell the

(4) This aspect will be further developed in the chapter on "Law, Sin and Salvation". See p. 216-219

appropriate manner of approaching this trouble-maker, in order to re-establish right and peaceful relationship with him (or her), and thus to bring back status quo to the afflicted group.

A sacrifice is always necessary in such cases, and the onus is on the headman of the lineage, or the father of the family, to prepare for this according to the diviner's instructions. Required ingredients ordinarily include strips of various cloths, to be tied around the sacrificial tree, to "clothe" the spirits; a goat of a special colour, or a fowl, to be killed according to the verdict of the divining bones; and beer made of millet (wuputsu).

The most senior male member of the afflicted kin-group, or an old hamañi (female member of the patrilineage), ⁽¹⁾ performs the sacrifice turned towards the sacrificial tree in the village, while all gathered kin members silently take place behind. The officiant tells his departed father and paternal grand-father of the reason for the gathering, asking them to call the other hamañi, which has been indicated by the divining bones as sender of the disturbance. He then establishes ceremonial contact with the present spirits by spitting a mouthful of beer on the ground, and proceeds to kill the sacrificial animal. It is noticeable how this ritual depends upon the existing social structure.

Prayers offered by the officiant are always extemporaneous, although the general order of their words to follow a pattern. And certain phrases are used on all similar occasions. The contents of these prayers are very matter-of-fact: "Here is bear. Here is goat. Here are cloths to cover you". This presentation is followed by an invitation to the spirits to partake of what is offered. The misery of the kin-group because of the actual disturbance is then expressed, and the officiant requests "Hamañi" (spirit) for his relations. He then ends his prayer by asking the spirits to "lie down" and not

(1) See "The Social World of the Tswana", p. 14.

trouble their kin any more. (6)

After proper preparation, the meat of the sacrificed animal(s) is eaten by all partakers. Beer drinking is also an obligatory part of this meal.

If it proves impossible at the occasion to find the prescribed ingredients for the sacrifice, a solemn ritual promise can be made through the process of kurieketa, implying that the requested sacrifice will be made as soon as circumstances will allow. At this ceremony, some strips of cloth are tied round the sacrificial tree, and certain signs of the intended sacrificial animal, e.g. some feathers of a hen, are stuck into the ground.

Memorial rites

During the winter season, while agricultural activity is low, the whole lineage comes together for a great memorial feast. This is called 'the great sacrifice' (isakata yo hachai), or the same name is used as for such occasional sacrifices which are offered to commemorate some recently deceased kinsman. At the 'Great Sacrifice', several animals are killed. The great-son of the lineage (isakata yo iixaki) who is the officiant also at this occasion supplies the meat, and other things provide guests of food.

As the most prominent social gathering of the whole kin-group, 'The Great Sacrifice' obviously fills other functions than purely religious ones. It is an important occasion for social reparation. Plans for impending marriages are subjects of conversation. As kinsmen from a distance also make an effort to take part in this occasion, undoubtedly it also functions as a means of new alliance. Nevertheless, it is the religious ceremony that calls the kinsmen together. This

(6) See comment on "lying down" in "Tahiti traditional beliefs", p. 39. Cf. R. Hunter, Reaction to conversion, p. 297.

has, in principle, many similarities with the sacrifice of the rite described above. The main special features are the following:

1. Water plays a special role. The officiant squirts water from his mouth into the face of the sacrificial animal before he kills it with the spear. Water is also sprinkled on the ground in front of the sacrificial tree, where the meat is to be put. "Mat. maku ti-ti-ti-ku ku kape, hi kuma wutomi". (= "Water says 'cool, cool', (so that) everything is quiet, we get life"). (7)

2. The blood of the sacrificial animal (in the case of a hunter's lineage, a ram) sacrificed by the officiant, must be "extinguished" (ku timela mhatata) by the blood of a female animal. Ordinarily this is provided for by the second animal sacrificed being a female. It would seem that this necessity to 'extinguish' the blood, or to 'cool' it, arises from the potential danger of 'heat' (kuhisa). (8)

3. The officiant's prayers on this occasion address themselves to his father, grand-father, great grand-father, etc., as far as names of patrilineal ancestors are remembered. These are then requested to "call all the others to come and share in the feast". Furthermore, prayers are made, in general, deal with actual misfortunes. There is thanksgiving for blessings during the year past, and askings for "upto-i ni makatekwa" (life and well-being), for off-spring within the lineage, and fertility of fields and domestic animals. Let 'male sicknesses' stay far away. If sickness, let it be 'female ones', for which we can find help. (9) Let hyenas and lions stay

If sickness, let it be 'female ones',

Let hyenas and lions stay

(7) The important concepts of 'heat' (kuhisa) and 'cooling' (ku timela) will be explored in detail in chapter on "Heat, Life and Salvation". See pp. 214-215

(8) See footnote No. 7

(9) Tinghabe for sickness (= "male sicknesses") are strong and difficult sicknesses, for which remedies are hard to find. Amilpa (Amilpa) is one example.

far away... etc." Ordinarily, the officiant closes his prayers with the words "It is you, your child, whom you have born."

4. The climax of the 'Great Sacrifice' is the act of pouring out the pot' (ku halata ngelo). One informant described this in the following manner:

"There is a big pot into which they throw all kinds of grain, millet, maize, etc., and some meat from the goats that were killed, together with intestines and swanyi (10). Then they pour water and beer into the pot and stir. Then all of that lineage who are weeping for their ancestors take hold of this pot, everybody! As they are so many, some hold on to the ones standing in front of them, because if you hold somebody who has contact with the pot, you are also holding the pot.

Now, as they take hold of this pot, to pour it out right there, to the kingalove, they pray. Everybody of them opens his mouth to say what is in him, and asks for life. There is a big noise, because they pray for themselves".

This interesting form of prayer, which strongly differs from prayers offered by the officiant, as every kinsman here has a possibility to express himself, will be further discussed in the section on "Christian worship". (11)

5. The act of eating the sacrificial meat is done in a special order, each kinship category eating in a group by itself. Certain parts of the animals are ascribed to certain categories. There is also a definite assumption that this meal is eaten together with the ancestors.

6. Pieces of skin from the sacrificed animals are cut out and tied around the wrist of everyone partaking in the ceremony. (12)

Several of the quoted features obviously serve to stress the ideal unity of all kin members. Some re-affirm the super-

(10) Half digested grass found in goat's stomach

(11) See p. 136

(12) Cf. M. Hunter, op. cit. pp. 250-251

human sanction of the existing social structure, and it becomes clear through the ritual that "life" is to be found only within and through the kinship context.

The memorial rites directed to some nguluvu who had recently been counted among the living, were usually held either approximately forty days or a full year after the death. This sacrifice was called banjha and proceeded similarly to 'The Great Sacrifice', with the necessary variation that the number of animals was reduced, and prayers were given a slightly different address and contents.

I have not observed that the banjha represents a "welcoming back" ceremony (ukubuyisa) as among the Zulu and Swazi, but I would not exclude this possibility. (13)

Rites of the soil

The reference group in the case of life crises rites is the kin. In all rites of the soil, it is the neighbourhood - a territorially determined group of people. It is true that the 'rites of the soil' also direct themselves towards ancestral spirits (tinguluvu), but they are here addressed primarily in their capacity of being 'owners of the land', and not as superhuman caretakers of a kin group.

In principle, the ownership of the soil is vested in the chief's person, as the living representative of the chiefs who ruled before him, "one in the soil", as Janod expresses it. (14) Nevertheless, one must never forget that his is in reality a 'caretaker-government', acting on behalf of the real owners, his ancestors, who lived on and are buried in

(13) N.H. Goshen, "Religious beliefs and practices" in I. Schaperae, (ed), Bantu-speaking tribes of South Africa, pp. 249-250; H.A. Marwick, The Swazi, p. 225.

(14) H.A. Janod, Life of a South African tribe, I, p. 405.

...owner-
 ...conquest does not automatically make
 ...owner' of the soil. Or rather, ownership can
 ...both from a juristic viewpoint and a ritual (mysti-
 ...of ...
 ...power for at least 150 years. But they
 ...have no ritual rights over their soil. If somebody
 ...outside enters with the intention to settle, the chiefs
 ...the right to give them a portion of land to cultivate
 ...to build on (subject to rulings of the Portuguese admini-
 ...strations). Thus, they have the juristic right of ownership.
 ...but, when it comes to sacrificing for rain and fertility of
 ...their soil, they are bound to call a person from the Massinga-
 ...Ronga tribe to perform the ceremony. This is to ac'know-
 ...ledge the ancestor of the Massinga-Ronga ...
 ...the soil in spite of their descendants having ... subjugat-
 ...by the ... long ago.

...parts of the Tshwa area, where the Hlengwe and Dziva
 ...been settled for a longer period of time, Tshwa chiefs
 ...rights of ownership.
 ...the ...
 ...main-
 ...in times of drought.

The Calendaric rites of the soil are (a) planting cere-
 ...; (b) the "biting" (*kuluma*) ritual when the new crop
 ...ready to be eaten, and (c) thanksgiving festival (*kunyika*
 ...ubonga) after the harvest.

In the ... community, all people digging
 ...part in
 ...essential for

(15) In Vilanculos, the Shona lineage sacrifices for
 ...and in Manhiça, the Bala.

the whole agricultural process. The principal set of rites is performed close to the chief's village, and this becomes the signal for similar performances at several places in the surrounding area.

Leadership of the calendaric rites is in the hands of the chief, or his ritual representative before the local owners of the soil. This ritual performer may also lead the ceremonies in certain other places, but this task seems often to be delegated to other old men in good ritual standing with the local ancestors. Some informants called such a leader mbumba (medical practitioner), but this feature seems not to be decisive.

The place for these ceremonies is constantly at the foot of certain trees "out in the fields". Such a tree, whatever kind it may be, is called lisiki, a name which speaks of fertility. (16)

Grain of various kinds are used for sacrifice at the lisiki, both at the time of planting and at the harvest festival. At the latter occasion, all types of produce from the fields are offered in thanksgiving to the 'owners of the soil'. Beer brewed from the new year's crop is then another important part of the ritual. It is significant that no animals are killed at these sacrifices. "Blood should not be shed in the fields".

At the time of planting, seeds are also magically treated. This special rite is called khoholo, and is said to protect the growing seed from the evil influence of witches. Every partaker in the khoholo ceremony plants some 'treated' seeds at various points in each corner of his fields. The fields are then regarded as being magically "blessed in".

Grains are ritually used also at the mbumba ("healing") ceremony, when the new crop is ready to be eaten. All growing plants that were magically "blessed" through the khoholo

(16) Cf. the expression "mbumba hi nyumba" ("She is pregnant")

rite are then "released" from the magic sanction. A ritual eating of "wet maize", e.g., (zibaki zo tsakama) is the signal for common use of the new year's crop. Certain kinds of trees, e.g. the khanyi-tree, (17) are also protected by ritual sanctions, and the new fruit has to be properly "bitten" before it is considered safe for use.

Hoes are also given a place in calendaric rites, notably at the time of planting. They are then dedicated at the lisike tree. The officiant 'writes' (ku tsala) on them with medicine, and they are then left by the tree overnight.

Prayers offered at calendaric rites generally take the form of "reporting" to the 'owners of the soil'. They are told by the officiant that "we intend to start digging", or "we are now beginning to eat this year", etc. There are, however, also petitions for normal rain, for blessing of the hoes, and "let not the hoes eat anyone". The harvest festival includes joyous prayers of thanksgiving.

Another feature of the calendaric rites worth noting is that no diviner has any role to play in this connection. Evidently, these ceremonies are so fixed parts of the seasonal rhythm that no further confirmation or new instruction is needed. The same is quite opposite at the rain rites, which may be regarded as 'rites of appeal' of the whole community.

Rain rites are considered of great importance in the traditional IsiNdebele community. Consequently, no power to perform them can be delegated, as in the case of the calendaric rites. They are performed centrally at a chief's village when an intricate divinitory process has established their necessity. Some informants claim that everyone cultivating in the district, for which the rain rites are being performed, has to make a contribution to this occasion, either in cash or in kind. (18)

(17) Calocaryx caffra. See H.A. Jund, op. cit. I p. 397

(18) Cf. statement by Colson quoted on p. 41

The main rain rite is the sacrifice to those ancestral spirits, who are considered 'owners of the soil'. This sacrifice may consist of both grain and some domestic animals, all according to the instructions of a special diviner. It is more than probable that other rain rites, of a more magical nature, accompany these sacrifices, ⁽¹⁹⁾ but these were either considered unimportant by informants or are not well-known to 'ordinary Tshwa'.

However, the special ceremony of kole wo lavu vula ("ritual to seek for rain") should be properly recorded, for at least two reasons:

- a) It is used when all other resources of rain ritual have been exhausted;
- b) It is the only known traditional Tshwa ceremony which seems to be an attempt to approach directly the Power of the Sky (Tila), and thus the ultimate source of the 'rain' and thus of 'life' (tozi).

The kole wo lavu vula rite has until recently been performed in times of drought. Informants in their twenties mentioned having heard of this ceremony taking place during their boyhood, but they also affirmed that it had not been performed since they grew up. The following description is composed of information from several informants, although the second paragraph is a complete statement from one informant:

All women past child-bearing age (vaxigama-nzeni) gathered at a house far away from any houses, and every one was obliged to stay inside. If some woman in the neighbourhood was believed to have had an abortion and buried the foetus herself to avoid detection, she was invited to lead the company of women to the secret burial place. There the women were asked or dreamed early in grass skirts, and on the morning of the foetus was kept in a wild dancing procession to a dump spot, where it was re-buried. Then, smoking of burial pipes and yiloca was an important part of kole wo lavu

(19) Cf. W.M. Ebdon, op. cit., pp. 68-69

vula.

"Then the whole group of old women continued their weird dancing, accompanied by their own obscene songs, in which they poured forth their utter misery. They cursed the Sky (ku yugubile Tilo), shouting "You who just live and live!" (Muhanyi nzi w-na! Muhanyi nzi wena!) They threw dirt towards heaven and bent over to show their nakedness to the Sky Power - the strongest curse available to a Tshwa woman. Then Tilo had to drive them away, and he had nothing else but the rain to use as his instrument. Thus, after this ceremony, it always rained".

Among other things, we see here another example of the danger caused by 'heat' (20) and the whole rite is geared towards the removal of this curse from the country. Therefore, only non-menstruating women qualify for this rite, and 'heat'-producing sexual relations are prohibited.

One important difference between ordinary approaches to the tinguluve (ancestral spirits) and this rite directed to the Sky Power (Tilo) should be noted: While a certain feeling of awe and respect characterized some parts of the sacrifices to tinguluve, here the cursing of the Sky Power is the basic note. The stark contrast between the human misery and the "much-life" of the Sky Power is sharply brought into focus.

The purpose of this strange "prayer" therefore seems to be to arouse angry action on the part of a temporarily inactive Sky Power, rather than to evoke his sympathy. One Christian Tshwa commented: "Our fathers knew that God exists, but they merely did not want him to worship him".

Observations regarding Tshwa traditional worship

I find that the general aim of the various types of traditional Tshwa rituals is "life" (ngwona) for self, kinsmen, neighbours and land. As these rites - with one exception -

(20) For a detailed discussion of the 'heat' concept, see pp. 214-215

are directed towards departed kinsmen or former inhabitants of the land, there is the underlying assumption that this 'life' should be similar to conditions known to the ancestors during their own life-time. This gives a strong conservative emphasis to the rituals. Excesses or innovations are not requested. It is rather status quo, "sufficient life" (iwutomi gi eneleko) that is craved.

It is important to note that, as the Tshwa seek "life" in and through the respective group, they also face adversity together. No individual is left entirely on his own, except if he voluntarily cuts himself off from his kin group (or is shut out because of being suspected of witchcraft).

This group approach to the superhuman world constantly affirms the existing social structure and undoubtedly facilitates and strengthens 'right relationships' between group members, both in terms of social and actual reality. (21) "The participants develop a bond of fellowship and therefore of esprit de corps which provides mutual support each towards the other". (22)

Recorded acts of individual worship are limited to certain elderly persons, closely tied to recently deceased kin elders. I suggest that such attention should be interpreted in terms of personal attachment, or as an extension of particular filial piety. The ritual closeness to the lingulaye (ancestral spirits) of the person approaching them on behalf of his kin-group may also inspire an individual to continuous personal attention. In this context, it is significant to note that elderly Tshwa persons are sometimes called by the same term of ngulaye, ordinarily reserved for the spirits of the depart-

(21) Cf. A.R. Radcliffe-Brown, Structure and function in primitive society, p. 136.

(22) G. Duménil, "Sacrifice" in Dickson-Elingsworth, (ed.), Ritual revolution and African beliefs, p. 73.

ed - a custom also found among the Venda. (23)

A pragmatic approach towards worship is evident among the Tshwa. Every act of worship has a definitely stated purpose, and certain results are therefore expected from such an act, particularly as it has always been called for through the divinatory process (except calendaric rites). A seasonal regularity marks the calendaric rites of the soil, but even there the different purpose of every act is explicit.

There is an abundance of symbolic ingredients and actions in Tshwa traditional ritual: Water, and 'extinguishing' of blood, to obviate 'heat'; ceremonial spitting⁽²⁴⁾; cloths to cover the spirits; communal meal eaten together with the spirits; hoes and seed being dedicated; fields magically 'fenced in', etc.

Similar to rituals of many other peoples, ceremonial killing of animals is an integral part of Tshwa traditional worship, except in calendaric rites. The importance of blood, therefore, raises several questions, for which my material provides only insufficient answers. It may be assumed, however, that "blood provides the fullest ground for bridging the gulf which has been caused by death".⁽²⁵⁾ This is why it is especially important in rites of life crises, through which 'curses' (*khombo*) have to be removed. "A curse requests blood" (*A khombo ga k atila nkhomo*).

As blood is recognized as the source of life, it also "revivifies the object to whom the offering is made".⁽²⁶⁾ The several animals killed at "The Great Sacrifice" would seemingly provide such a revivification for the large host of ances-

(23) H.W. Gijssels, "Venda people for God", in The Bible Translator, vol. 21, No. 9, Oct. 1970, p. 184

(24) See further on p. 186

(25) H. Sawyerr, op. cit., p. 71

(26) Ibid.

tral spirits. As the blood penetrates into the soil, the abode of the ancestors, it also becomes a living link between the people of the lineage and their tinguluve.

As to frequency, traditional sacrificial rites are still being commonly performed. Some evidence points to the possibility that rain rituals are somewhat losing their importance, although exceptional drought - as in 1970 - calls for great communal efforts in this respect. Also the rites of khoholo are reportedly not as universal as they used to be. Memorial kinship rites, on the other hand, are still regarded as regular and important, particularly in the case of chiefs' lineages. Informants agreed that chiefs who refuse to perform such kinship rites will have extreme difficulties in keeping their true status among the people. The kind of rites, however, which seem to continue most universally in use, are 'rites of life crises'.

In spite of the mentioned conservatism, certain modifications of the described rituals may take place because of various outside influence, but there is nothing to suggest that the significance of them is in any process of immediate change among non-Christian Tshwa. In spite of the common saying that 'the tinguluve are afraid of trousers', i.e. modern clothing (a tinguluve ti siya wabuluku),⁽²⁷⁾ modernisation of ways of living, which by its nature is limited to Christian Tshwa, has seemingly not diminished the importance of the ancestors to any great extent. This refers particularly to the ancestors of the wen kin. In this respect, I find the Tshwa situation more akin to what Mitchell and Mayer found in Salisbury and in East London, than to Pauw's experience among the Tswana.⁽²⁸⁾

(27) This could also mean that the cult of the tinguluve demands strict adherence to traditional regulations, also as regards dress.

(28) J.C. Mitchell, "The meaning in misfortune for urban

Christian Worship

Regularity

We have established that worshipful attendance to the ancestral spirits, by prayer and sacrifice, is the condition sine qua non for attaining 'sufficient life', the highest good for the Tshwa. ⁽²⁹⁾ As this same ideal is included in the Christian value of 'a better life' (wutomi ga chukwana), ⁽³⁰⁾ it would seem logical that Christian worship among Tshwa also aims at reaching the goal of 'life'. As we now turn to scrutinizing Tshwa Christian worship, it is my intention to show how, and to what extent, this assumption is true.

Christian worship has, ideally, both a private and a public side, each one complementing the other. Many Tshwa Christians pray privately, particularly in times of distress, and family worship is used in certain cases. But, on the whole, most Tshwa Christians depend for their regular worship entirely on meetings, and services in church, i.e. public, or group worship.

Regularity is a hallmark of Tshwa Christian worship as in the Christian Church everywhere. Festive seasons provide special emphasis, but the Sunday service is the main source of spiritual nourishment. Many of those who live close to a church take part in the daily morning prayer at the crack of dawn, usually led by some lay leader. A weekday evening meeting is part of the pattern, depending somewhat on local circumstances. Class-meetings for prayer and spiritual education occur frequently, and class sessions for the teaching of

Africans", in African systems of thought, p. 202;
D. Meyer, Township of Tsimba, pp. 191-194;
B.A. Shaw, Religion in a Tswana chiefdom, p. 38

(29) See chapter on "Quest for Life", p. 107

(30) See "Quest for Life", p. 111

baptismal candidates are partly used as occasions for worship. (31)

Liturgical order

The free, non-liturgical worship, which distinguished Protestantism from the Roman Catholic liturgy, (32) is still the principle. All freedom, however, is nowadays more a mark on certain items within the service than of the actual order. In this respect, it appears that the Free Methodists keep closer to the original freedom than the Methodist Episcopal Church, but this is only an impression on my part. As the Methodist Episcopal hymnal "Tisimu ta Ivangeli" ("Hymns of the Gospel") is accepted and used in all Tshwa Protestant churches, I assume with good reasons that the order of worship printed there is rapidly becoming standard in the whole Tshwa area:

"Order of Worship in the Church

(May all services begin at the appointed time, when all people enter the church, may they kneel and pray in their hearts).

1. Hymn from Tisimu ta Ivangeli. People standing.
2. The Apostles' Creed to be read by all, standing.
3. Prayer, ended with the Lord's Prayer. Preacher and people kneeling.
4. A hymn.
5. Lesson from the Old Testament. If a Psalm is used, it shall be read antiphonally. people kneeling.
6. "Gloria" to be sung, people standing.
7. Lesson from the New Testament
8. Announcements and Offering
9. A hymn, people standing

(31) The same pattern is used in Congo Christian churches. See H. Anderson, Churches at the grass-roots, pp. 75-76

(32) See "Introduction of Christianity", p. 73

10. Sermon
11. Prayer, people kneeling
12. A hymn, people standing
13. Doxology, and the Apostles' Benediction, 2 Chor.
13:14", (33)

Even if many worship leaders feel free to introduce occasional changes, the Apostles' Creed, the Lord's Prayer, the Gloria, the Doxology and the Benediction are fixed items of this order of worship, and constitute a fair amount of regular liturgy. Furthermore, the 'Psalm', indicated in item 5 above has become rather regularized, as this follows the list of several Psalms from the Bible which have been selected for 'daily readings', one for each day of the month. These Psalms are printed in the hymn book and are always read antiphonally. The fact that these are usually referred to as 'the Day' (Siku), indicates that they have become another fixed part of the liturgy.

Singing and preaching

The free elements of worship are hymns, New Testament text, sermon and prayers, and the items of announcements and offering.

Some preachers, ordained or lay, have special gifts of music, which they utilize in bringing new and varied songs and hymns into the service. In certain places, particularly on mission stations, choirs help to diversify the church music. Variation of presentation, and freedom of selection are thus real possibilities. Nevertheless, there is a tendency to keep the choice of songs and hymns in worship services down to a minimum. Certain hymns of Tisimu ta Ivangeli appear to be very popular, while the bulk remains essentially unknown to most worshippers. This may be a usual occurrence in other countries, but when the total choice is narrowed down to the 200 hymns of Tisimu ta Ivangeli and the few free

(33) Tisimu ta Ivangeli, Music Edition, p. 102

"Rinzelani", ⁽³⁴⁾ this tendency comes into a different perspective.

It therefore seems evident that the hymn-singing element in Tshwa Christian worship is in the process of becoming a more fixed item of liturgy.

The New Testament text is usually the basis for the sermon. However, many Tshwa preachers nowadays seem to prefer using several sermon texts, often utilizing both Old and New Testament. Here the preacher has complete freedom. No set texts are prescribed.

A systematic study of text selection and sermons would certainly reveal many important features of theological trends within Tshwa Christian churches, but no such research has yet been undertaken. However, the manner of selection, and preparation of sermons often points to a certain interpretation of the work of the Holy Spirit. Texts are often seemingly selected on the spur of the moment, ⁽³⁵⁾ and several conversations with both ordained and lay Tshwa preachers in the Transvaal mines revealed that preparation to preach means 'to be open to the immediate guidance of the Spirit', during the actual delivery of the sermon. Some even scorned any systematic sermon preparation. "You should not preach your own words but what comes to you from the Holy Spirit".

Several Tshwa ministers do have a different understanding of preaching and its preparation, but it appears rather common that Tshwa Christian worshippers are given sermons which are not "prepared" in the usual sense of the word. Obviously, this opens a great possibility for the recurrence of favourite texts and themes. ⁽³⁶⁾

(34) "Rinzelani" (= "wait!") is the name given to a small booklet of hymns and songs, issued by the Free Methodist Church

(35) Cf. B.A. Pauw, op. cit. p. 127

(36) Cf. B.A. Pauw, op. cit. p. 127; and B.A.H. Sandkier, Porta Prophetica in South Africa, pp. 186 and 191

At the end of the sermon, a common emphasis of
prayer is on 'ku ti nyikela' ("to dedicate oneself").
Often, it often occurs that one or more persons go
forward to kneel in front of the pulpit, sometimes approach-
ing while singing a song of prayer. Once kneeling, the per-
son dedicating himself often prays loudly, weeping,
asking forgiveness for his sins.

As a rule, such an event is the signal to the whole con-
gregation to kneel, usually continuing the song that has been
started, and subsequently everyone in the church is praying
in silence. Some bow their heads, while others gesticulate
freely, everyone obviously completely concentrated on his own
prayer. Phrases like "Forgive my sins", and "You
are my Lord and my God" are frequently used.
There is a sense of complete freedom of expression, and
great spiritual release is unconsciously taking place in this
or joint prayer. (37)

A person dedicating himself in this fashion may be a
new convert seeking to become a believer. More
often, however, the person dedicates himself, maybe
because he has sinned in the service or sermon, or in some
other way, and is feeling guilty. In this way, such
a kind of dedicating ceremony serves as a type of public
confession, and it is not specific reference to a sinful
act. "I have sinned, O Lord, & C 30".

Another kind of prayer, initiated by a person 'dedi-
cating himself' to God, is usually directed by the preacher.
In this case, special attention is paid to the person
dedicating himself, and he goes back to his seat while the
rest of the congregation rises from its kneeling position.
The person dedicating himself receives assistance in extended

in certain Tswana churches to persons that having 'redeemed themselves', but in my experience this has only happened during special 'evangelistic campaigns', where the emphasis is on conversion.

Prayer in public worship

Joint prayer of the type described above has perhaps developed through the introduction of certain patterns of prayer. It is not impossible, however, that this is a Christian adaptation of the joint prayer at the time of 'emptying out the pot' during the 'Great Sacrifice' and a tshepo. We recall that, in these ceremonies, everybody uses his mouth to say what is in him (to the spirits), and ask for life. There is a tshepo because they pray for themselves. (38)

Two patterns of development are here possible as explanations: (a) Joint prayer of a Pentecostal type possibly introduced by certain missionaries may have aroused a strong and immediate emotional response in Tswana Christians because of identification with a traditional ritual: (b) Newly converted groups in a highly emotional fervour, may have been unconsciously led to utilize a traditional pattern to express their need in a new idiom. Being identified (by missionaries) with a known practice of a certain Christian group, it was subsequently accepted within the Church.

All other acts of prayer in Christian public worship are performed in an orderly fashion, without being bound to set formulas. 'Free prayer' is still a significant mark of Tswana Protestant worship. (39) Nevertheless, certain features keep recurring, such as the use of tshepo and tshepo in the tshepo.

(38) See p. 121

(39) See Introduction of Christianity

The privilege of leading in prayer is mostly reserved for ministers and lay leaders. In small groups, this pattern may be abandoned, and even young people may occasionally be prodded to pray aloud. But these are exceptions. It would not seem improbable that the traditional Tshwa custom of an elder praying on behalf of the group is the model. (40)

In spite of the spontaneity of prayer, certain items and phrases can reasonably be expected to occur. Thanksgiving and praise to God is prominent. Particularly in Free Methodist context I have observed the use of a set phrase "h. gi bonglwe!" (= "May it/b.e. the name of Jesus/be thanked!") The immediate response from the group to this expression is "Amen", whereupon the person leading the prayer continues. The same phrase may be repeated several times during the same prayer.

Furthermore, no Christian Tshwa prayer seems complete without mentioning the sick, both in general as "those who suffer in hospital", and some particular cases. This refers also to the frequent occasions when prayers of two or more lay leaders immediately succeed each other within the same worship event. A very common petition is also "Give us life" (hi nyike volom!).

It is somewhat surprising that "Give us life" is not something to be specially prayed for. This is rather accepted as "the reward to all who faithfully worship God until the end". (41) Petitions for "life" may therefore be assumed to move in the same general realm as the traditional ideal of "sufficient life", where health, procreation and fertility of the soil have a prominent place. (42)

Prayer is mainly addressed to God - seldom to Christ,

(40) See pp. 118 ff.

(41) Cf. John 3:16

(42) See p. 107

even if it always ends "in the name of Jesus Christ, our Lord". The epithets "Father", "Almighty" (Nyamintamu) or "Lord" are used interchangeably, together with other names of God (Nungungulu). Some persons keep addressing God in prayer as "God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob", or "God of Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego".⁽⁴³⁾ Even at the risk of over-emphasizing similarities with traditional Tshwa customs, I suggest that this is a reminiscence of the usual address at a Tshwa sacrifice, where all ancestors are called by name to attend.⁽⁴⁴⁾

Role of prayer outside of public worship

Prayer (kukombela) is by no means limited to periods of public worship. It is the single item that seems to be the remnant of Christian worship among the Tshwa. This, of course, is in agreement with very general observations concerning religious experience.

"Where prayer arises and sets the soul in motion", writes James in his Varieties of the Religious Experience, "we have - even in the absence of creeds and pious forms - a living religion".⁽⁴⁵⁾ Later on he continues: "The conviction that one really accomplishes something through prayer is the outline of living religion".⁽⁴⁶⁾

In the Tshwa context, prayer was certainly not introduced through Christianity. It was a natural and integral part of traditional worship. While teaching Tshwa Christians to direct their prayers to God instead of their linguluvu, the Church has also made prayer far more conscious, and it has been partly freed from the institutional and emotional bias with the act of public worship. In accordance with the Protestant doctrine of "the priesthood of all believers",⁽⁴⁷⁾ Tshwa have

(43) Exodus 24:3; cf. Ps. 113:5, Ps. 113:6.

(44) See p. 120.

(45) W. James, Varieties of the Religious Experience, p. 41.

(46) Ibid. p. 43.

(47) 1 Peter 2:9; Revelations 1:6.

been taught that any Christian has the right to approach God directly through prayer.

Judging from conversations with Tshwa Christians in mine compounds, I do not believe that private prayer has yet begun to play a significant role in being a source of spiritual inspiration. This is still primarily sought in joint worship. However, when feelings of acute guilt have been aroused, private prayer appears to be the main key to recover spiritual equilibrium.

Several informants affirm that they confess their sins in private prayer to God, whenever they understand that they have committed a sinful act, and pray for forgiveness. A few mentioned that, in certain instances, they had been praying several times, for a number of days, before they understood that 'they had been forgiven by God'. Obviously, similar prayers are offered during the periods of joint prayer, in connection with 'dedication' (See above). It is to be noted that, in all these cases, confession of sins is done only to God. (48)

Prayer sessions for seriously ill persons are obligations keenly felt and observed by Tshwa Christians. Several informants gave personal examples of intensive prayer periods for somebody sick in the family, or in the Christian community. In many cases, it was noted that the prayed-for person was undergoing medical treatment. One informant gave the following description of prayer sessions for seriously sick:

'There is no great difference between prayers for sick, and ordinary prayers. It is mainly that, when we offer our daily prayers, we remember our whole life (watch). But at these special times, our hearts pray for and suffer on behalf of the one who is sick.'

(48) This aspect will be further investigated in the chapter on "Law, Sin and Salvation". See p. 235

Our lay leader tells us that someone in the village is suffering, and he sets a day for prayer. On that afternoon we go to the home of the sick person to pray.

Before we begin, we have to abstain from food, and we must pray for ourselves, too. We are also told not to have any intercourse with our wives.

I remember four times when I took part in such prayers. Once we prayed for a woman who had been bitten by a dog. Another time, we prayed for our lay leader's child, who had severe headache and influenza. Here in Johannesburg, we went twice to hospital to pray for friends who had been wounded in mine accidents..."

We note here the element of ritual purity, necessary for the prayer to be effective. This is the only known occasion when prayer must be further 'strengthened' in this manner, although it is possible that strong feelings of guilt, prompting a Christian to periods of private prayer for forgiveness, may also dictate conditions of ritual purity to an individual. (49)

Special occasions of worship

Besides the worship regularity tied to the week, a certain seasonal schedule is followed. The main items are:

1. Christmas, often celebrated with a dramatic presentation of the Nativity, and a joint meal. In Christian compounds generally, the whole Christmas season is a time for daily sacramental meetings, for singing, prayer and drama rehearsal.

2. Also on Palm Sunday and Easter, the dramatic wealth of the Gospel narratives is well utilized. Palm Sunday processions are common, and sometimes the Good Friday and Easter events are dramatically portrayed. In certain districts, apart from special preaching and prayer services, groups of young people wake up the community early on Easter morning with songs commemorating the resurrection of Christ.

3. A Thanksgiving festival (hamsika kubonga) at the

(49) Cf. Communion, p. 151 and chapter on 'Law, Sin and Salvation', p. 21 ff.

end of the agricultural season (May or June) is another joyous occasion. Products from the fields, and domestic animals, are then presented in church as thanks-offerings for the harvest. It is obvious that this is a case of christianizing a traditional rite, (50) and it is often reported that this festival attracts more non-Christians to church than any other occasion.

4. The fight against Drink is marked by a special 'abstinence weekend' in November. At that time, the cashew-fruit will soon ripen, traditionally introducing the season of drinking the strong cashew liquor (sope). The dramatic abilities of Tshwa are utilized once again, and special songs make the lessons penetrating.

5. Certain periods within the year are dedicated to 'revivals' (tivux lelo). Usually a week is then used for daily meetings in church. A special theme is the focus of sermons and teaching, and, as a rule, fund-raising for a particular purpose is part of the 'revival'. The weekend immediately following the revival week is the climax, with services of dedication and offerings. Usually, group prayers and singing continue all through the night between Saturday and Sunday.

6. 'Conferences' also play the role of Christian Festivals. Each parish has its 'quarterly conference', where all local church work is reported and discussed. Larger groups of both believers and non-Christians gather for such meetings, and worship here are usually become occasions for evangelistic messages. (51)

The same applies on a larger scale to the 'Annual Conference' (generally held during the winter season), where delegates from each parish in Macambane and the Transvaal come meet for a week with all ministers of the Church. The last Sunday of the Annual Conference has lately become a very popular rallying point for groups of Christians also from long distances. Almost continuously since meetings mark that day as the great Christian festival of the year.

Christian Memorial Services

One feature of the Annual Conference is the memorial ser-

(50) See p. 123 ff.

(51) Cf. B.A. Pauw, ibid., pp. 1.4-1.5

...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...

...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...

...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...

...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...
...the ... of ... and ...

on the Sunday morning. Another "was certain that the meat we ate had been offered to the tinguluve".

The hesitancy of some ministers in regard to timisa, and the words from my informants, would confirm that private memorial services among the Tshwa are at least potentially syncretistic. As this rite has its roots both in traditional Tshwa custom and in the Roman Catholic usage of "masses for the dead", it seems as if timisa have entered the Protestant context through the backdoor and rapidly gained popularity. As far as I am aware, little positive guidance has been given Tshwa Protestants in this sphere, except for the old rule that "worshipping the ancestors is sinful". The whole matter of Christians' attitudes towards their ancestors will be further discussed in the chapter on "Death and Life Eternal". (52)

Christian agricultural rites

When the Spring rains have begun to fall, Christian farmers take their hoes and some seed to church at dawn of their first day of planting. Prayers are offered for the seed to grow, for sufficient rain, and for the work with the hoes to be blessed. In one instance I was told that seed and hoes are taken to church at night "to sleep there", and to be fetched again at the special prayers offered the following morning.

It is evident that this agricultural rite, together with the thanksgiving service (kunyika wabononi) have been directly transferred from the traditional context and given a Christian direction. The role of the ancestors (tinguluve) as givers of "life" (wutoni) through rain and fertility of the soil has been consciously transferred to God. As the Tshwa traditionally ascribed the ultimate power of giving rain and fertility to the Sky Power (Tlalo), the actual change, in this case, is possibly rather slight.

(52) See p. 257-260

Most informants had not taken part in any special Christian prayer sessions for rain. "Rain is frequently mentioned when we pray in church", one informant said, "but I do not remember being called to a special rain prayer". During certain times of drought, however, as the first half of 1970, I have had reports of periods of prayer meetings for rain. It would appear that the extent of such activities depends largely upon local leadership. I am not aware of any special forms or rites used in this connection.

Sacraments

Members of the Methodist Episcopal Church and the Free Methodist Church are divided, according to the Patayilshai order, into 1) 'listeners' (vaingidishai), 2) preparatory members (varingeshai), and 3) 'full members' (saipo shi talishai). The 'listeners' are largely inside the door of the community, beginning to take part in regular worship and to obey Christian ethical disciplines. When they have been found faithful in attending church, they are usually accepted by the local leader into preparatory membership and begin studying the catechism (saipo shi talishai) together with others preparing for baptism.

This study consists mainly in learning by heart certain answers to questions on basic items of Christian (Protestant) faith: God, man, sin, Jesus Christ and salvation through Him, plus doctrines regarding baptism and communion.

During the time of preparation, great stress is also laid on the candidates' acquiring Christian norms of behaviour, and regulations of church membership, particularly the matter of 'giving', are part of the instruction. 'Christian behaviour' is usually accepted as evidence of a conversion, and, at least in some communities, the record of regular giving during the time of study is regarded as an important sign of a 'change of heart'.

Such a period of preparation usually extends over several months, and on the occasion of a baptismal service, all candidates

are examined by lay leaders and presented to the minister. All who have "passed" the examination and satisfy the leaders in regard to Christian ways of living, will then be baptized in connection with the Sunday service. The method of 'baptism by sprinkling' will be used. Baptism by immersion is prescribed as an alternative form in Methodist Churches, but I have not yet witnessed such a baptism among the Tshwas.

As baptism is the rite without which no one can become a full member of the Church, it can be classified as a rite of transition. In times past, a person being baptized would drop his original name and adopt a 'Christian' one. Thus, he became a new person in a concrete sense. Nowadays, most children are given Portuguese names in their childhood - often in addition to a Tshwa name, which is known only to an inner circle - and the name change at baptism has therefore largely lost its significance.

In general, it seems that baptism is passionately desired among Tshwas as among other peoples of Africa, (53) because it is still regarded as an inevitable step into modern society. But above all, it is a necessary transition within the church structure. After this sacrament, a person "has the right to call himself a believer".

The function of baptism is understood as purification from sin. Water can remove the dirt and filth. Several informants stressed, however, that the sacrament must be received in active faith and intention that God will forgive their sins. Otherwise, "it will have no effect". Questioned what will happen to those who 'fall into sin' after baptism, informants answered: "Then they will know that they have sinned and have to seek God's forgiveness in prayer and through Holy Communion".

(53) Cf. e.g. Processes of growth in an African Church, p. 19

What parallels, if any, with baptism can be found within the traditional Tshwa system of worship?

Water is used for instance at the "Great Sacrifice" (shamba ya lomo), to 'cool' the mal (see p. 267) is, in general, regarded as a symbol of 'coolness' (utitimela). This quality describes the state of ritual purity as distinguished from the contaminated state of 'heat' (kuhisa). As also medicated water was sprinkled by the n'anga (medical practitioner) on all kindred men contaminated by the death contagion, (54) it can be surmised that the symbolic use of water in the sacrament of baptism is readily accepted.

A significant parallel to the function of baptism as a purification rite is found in the act of purification by the blood of a girl who has been dedicated to a 'spirit-of-revenge' (mupfukwa). (55)

This purification by blood in respect of a young woman who was to be married outside of the mupfukwa's kin, was vividly described by an informant:

"... Then we went there. They had killed a n'anga, and had prepared two roosters, one white and one black, and also a goat.

To start with, the n'anga killed the two roosters, sometime in the afternoon. He explained to the mupfukwa 'Your wife has grown up. She is getting married now. But we give you another one and she will stay with you.' So he sacrificed the two roosters, he also dedicated the new young girl.

Then they took hold of the goat. Two men held its forelegs, and two held its hind legs, and one held the head. Then the n'anga cut the goat, while saying, "We cleanse you, we cleanse you (ni si n'omvudala), we will put you into your marriage... we will do many things, until the goat's blood has finished.

The women were sitting under the goat, so all the blood streamed over our maid. When they had finished, all the

(54) See chapter on "Death and Life Rituals", p. 267

(55) See "Traditional Tshwa Beliefs", pp. 52-53

1

of purification and transition, the sacrament of baptism is celebrated by sprinkling among Tshwa Protestants (and Roman Catholics of course!) presents a rather matter-of-fact picture, where the intellectual preparation and understanding far more conspicuous than the symbolic act. It seems appropriate to question whether this form of baptism satisfies the demonstrated Tshwa desire for symbolism. It is worth noting that "adult baptism by full immersion is adopted by most (in Africa)". (59) Zionists in Zululand "point out that most Mission Churches only the forehead is washed and purified, whereas sin and pollution cling to all the rest of the body". (60) While literal interpretation of the Bible has a role in such partiality for immersion, it would seem probable that baptism by immersion is more meaningful than sprinkling to Africans. Parrinder concludes that "there seems no reason why all Christians (in Africa) should not observe baptism by immersion". (61)

This section on sacraments has been so far confined to baptism of adults, at present representing approximately half of all baptisms performed, at least in the Methodist Episcopal Church. The other half are baptisms of infants born to Christians. In these cases, the parents or godparents, after consulting the parents (62) - make a solemn promise to raise the child in the Christian faith.

According to the Methodist Episcopal Church, "every baptized child shall be entered into the Church as a member."

(59) G. Parrinder, Religion in Africa (1956), p. 111.

(60) G. Parrinder, op. cit. p. 111.

(61) G. Parrinder, op. cit. p. 111.

(62) High-priests have always been a powerful force in African societies, and their role in the Christian faith is a significant one.

about the age of twelve. But there is evidence that several young baptized persons are not given any systematic teaching of the Christian faith - outside of what they learn from sermons and Sunday School lessons. The fact that no ceremony has yet been adopted to climax the teaching of baptized children - like 'confirmation' in certain Churches - probably decreases the incentive among Church leaders to pay serious attention to such instruction.

While Baptism is a sacrament which a person uses only once in a lifetime, as he is made part of a new community, Holy Communion is a repeated act by which this community is kept together through a mystical bond, which ties members to each other, and to the Divine Power.

Both Sundkler and Mbiti have observed that Holy Communion (or "The Lord's Supper" / Xilalelo xa Hosi / as it is usually called among Tswana Christians) has lost much of its importance in so-called independent Churches. (63) Baptism, on the other hand, is extremely important in these connections, to the extent that it has become an often repeated ritual of purification. It is interesting to note that, in such independent Churches, Holy Communion has also been made into a rite of purification. "The highest prophet proved that the most important thing about Communion is the washing of the feet". (64)

In many Protestant Churches, sacraments have always been regarded as of secondary importance in the life of worship, while preaching of the word came in the first place. This aspect may be particularly conspicuous in situations where Protestants find themselves outnumbered by Roman Catholics. In Mozambique, such an attitude towards sacraments (particularly the Holy Communion) was instilled as Protestant Christianity was introduced in the area. (65) Also for practical

(63) J. Mbiti, op. cit. p. 20; B. Sundkler, op. cit. p. 21

(64) Ibid. p. 21

(65) "Introduction to Christianity", p. 70

reasons - as ordained missionaries only were allowed to officiate - celebration of the Lord's Supper became limited to certain large gatherings visited by some missionary. Even today, when all fully ordained African ministers have the right to serve this sacrament, the early established frequency pattern is still prevalent. In certain places, the Lord's Supper is celebrated every month, but usually is served only once a quarter.

In spite of such infrequency, it is important to note that Holy Communion is held in great awe and respect, whenever it is celebrated. "It is the Christians' mhamba (act of sacrifice)".

Nothing particular needs to be said about the ritual itself, as performed among the Tswana, as this faithfully follows the liturgical directions translated from the Methodist Ritual from America.

In the Tshwa interpretation of the Lord's Supper, three aspects stand out:

1. Purification from sin;
2. Remembrance of the death of Jesus Christ;
3. Communion with Christ

The element of 'purification from sin' is primary. The Communion table is the place "where sins can be left". One informant qualified a similar statement by adding that "baptized persons only can have their sins forgiven in the Lord's Supper". Again, baptism is seen as the condition for entering the community, of which the Lord's Supper is a continuing privilege.

A few informants mentioned that every communicant should take time before the Lord's Supper to pray and confess his sins before God, so that all your sins are forgiven when you approach the table. The significance here should not be primarily attached to the time factor, but to the fact of confess-

ion. This is the crucial matter, without which no purification can be expected. Thus, I have found no evidence of any magical belief ascribing 'supernatural power' to the elements of this sacrament. (66) Andersson mentions "the dread of unconfessed sins" on taking part in the Communion, (67) and this is the probable reason why some Tswana see confession to God as a necessary preparation. It should be observed that confession again is only made privately "before God alone".

"If you eat the Lord's Supper without being purified (na u nka basang) you will get into trouble", is an expression, however, which points to a different kind of preparation. We are here brought back to the belief that 'hot' persons could destroy the sacred act, not only for themselves but for all partakers. (68) Informants as well as some ministers state that a menstruating woman, for instance, ought not to take part in a Communion service. Other forms of 'heat' should also be avoided on this occasion. However, some added the modern note that "nowadays people are not so strict as they should be about these things". (69)

This element of ritual purification brings up a comparison between the Lord's Supper and mhamba (act of sacrifice). The same kind of ritual purity is expected on both occasions.

Two other important parallels can be drawn between the mhamba and the sacrament: 1) They are both acts of remembrance; 2) The element of communion with superhuman powers is conspicuous both in the traditional sacrifice and the Tswana Christian understanding of the Lord's Supper. It was found also among the Nyakyusa, that "Holy Communion... is felt to

(66) E. Andersson, op. cit. p. 169; See further chapter on "Law, Sin and Salvation", p. 235 f.

(67) E. Andersson, op. cit. p. 170

(68) See pp. 214-215

(69) Cf. B. Sundkler, op. cit. p. 216

replace.... the sacrifice and the communion with the shades". (70)

The difference between these two acts, apart from ritual details, lies primarily in the different objects of remembrance and communion. A further fundamental difference is found in the Christian doctrine that 'sacrifices are no more necessary'. The very sacrament of the Lord's Supper is, indeed, a continuous remembrance to a Christian that "Christ died for his sins". (71)

A further striking parallel between traditional rites and this sacrament is found in the expression of one informant: "The Lord's Supper is the eating of mifa-jungo of the believers". (72) As the partaking of this medicated porridge at the ritual death purification is traditionally believed to remove the death contagion (khombo ~~in~~ kufa) from the kin group, the sacrament of the Lord's Supper would purify every partaker from contamination of sin, which is the 'death contagion' barring non-believers from attaining the 'eternal life'.

The symbolic act of eating strikes a resonant note in Tshwa people, as eating together, in fact, has the deep significance of a covenant. At the ritual act of reconciliation between two quarrelling parties, eating and drinking plays a decisive role, (73) and we have already seen eating as an obligatory part of each sacrificial rite. The symbolic meaning of eating the Lord's Supper as an act of reconciliation with God and a renewal of a covenant within the group is therefore readily accepted by Tshwa Christians as meaningful.

(70) M. Wilson, Communal rituals of the Nyakyusa, p. 176

(71) Hebrews 10:12-14

(72) See chapter on "Death and Life Eternal", p. 247

(73) See chapter on "Pursuit of Health", p. 183

A statement by Mulago on this point seems to indicate that such symbolic meaning of eating is commonly understood in other parts of Africa:

"Communion through food only takes place between those who are, or wish to be, on peaceful, friendly or brotherly terms. Eating from the same dish or drinking from the same straw, means entering into interaction with someone else, letting his vital influence be exchanged with one's own. That is why a man under tabu would contaminate all who ate or drank with him. (74)

'Sacrifice' in Christian context

When Christian worship is compared to traditional Tshwa worship, one is struck by the fact that the 'concreteness', so significant and obligatory at the traditional sacrifice, seems to have been completely removed. Tshwa Christians worship much more regularly than their non-Christian counterparts, but they appear to have been completely divorced from church. Is Christian worship then completely abstract?

The former section on the Lord's Supper pointed out that, from a doctrinal angle, sacrifice is no longer necessary in a Christian context. This doctrine exonerates the Tshwa Christian from traditional obligations, simultaneously refuting all arguments that ancestors might need to be approached in a traditional manner. The term 'sacrifice' (*khuphilelo*, or *muphilelo*) as part of Christian teaching, is only used in a figurative sense, e.g. "Present your bodies as a living sacrifice" (Rom. 12:1), or "the sacrificial offering of your faith" (Phil. 2:17).

The concept of sacrifice, however, is used in the realm of 'Christian stewardship', through which all Christians are taught to give regular support to the Church. The ideal of 'tithing', i.e. giving a tenth of one's income 'to God' is set before the eyes of Christians, but it is recognized that

(74) V. Mulago, op. cit. p. 135

very few take this challenge seriously. (This, of course, applies not only to Tshwa).

In similarity with Church practice all over Africa, (75) the main local support in Tshwa Churches is built on a "ticket system", with an established, monthly or quarterly, amount which every member is expected to contribute. In Moçambique, this amount is now 15 escudos, (37 cents) a quarter. In the Transvaal mines, where cash is more readily available, the comparative figure has for long been 90 cents per quarter. A large part of the miners' contributions is sent to supplement the economy of the Church in their home country.

It should be added that a system of voluntary pledges has recently been introduced, counting the existing obligatory amount as the minimum pledge.

On top of monthly or quarterly dues, every member is expected to contribute to some special collections, frequently connected with 'revival weeks'. The most popular of these is the offering at the Harvest Thanksgiving (Kunyika kubonga). It should be noted that this last occasion mainly calls for collections in kind.

It would seem that even those who faithfully discharge their monthly or quarterly duties in regard to the Church never get anywhere near the expenses involved in the traditional system of sacrifice. Liberal giving does not appear to be necessary in the Christian context. Even the set rates "are difficult to keep" according to some informants - an observation that agrees well with my own experience of work among Tshwa Christians. Such a spirit is strongly contrasted against reports from, e.g. the 'Bhengu Church' in East London, where 'members feel 'proud' to spend so much money in church, and they spend, in general, more than in other churches". (76)

(75) See e.g. E. Andersson, op. cit. p. 67 or B.A. Pauw, op. cit. p. 81

(76) A.A. Dubb, The role of the church in an urban African society, II p. 76

It must be added, however, that a slight increase in per capita giving has been noted over the last few years, at least in certain areas. But the fact that the Church was regarded by Tshwa as an endowment, supplied and continuously supported from sources outside of their control, has without doubt been a crippling factor as far as local giving is concerned - however necessary the mission support from abroad has been, and continues to be.

Several other observations should be noted as potential reasons for the apparent disproportion between Christian 'giving' and sacrifices in the traditional context:

1. Regularity in giving is a foreign factor. In a situation of subsistence economy, regular giving is necessarily a great difficulty, as harvest periods (in good years) provide abundance, while relative poverty is the work of other parts of the year.

2. The system of giving is such as 'the law of the Church'. This 'law' is not regarded as obligatory in the same sense as the traditional law, considered as arising from the ancestors. It is neither supported by any supernatural sanctions against the offender, nor is it upheld with force like the law of the Portuguese administration. This 'law of the Church' appeals to the dedicated spirit of the 'believers', while somewhat retaining the compulsory flavour of a law imposed from outside.

3. Individual giving to the Church is contrasted to the traditional group responsibility, with the onus on the elder to provide a regular gift.

4. There is, of course, nothing to suggest that traditional sacrifices were necessarily given in a spirit of open willingness. But, as the fee to the diviner in 'ancestral' was a necessary condition for 'healing the land or man', the sacrifice itself - made according to the requirements of the divining human - was an immediate condition for restoring 'life' to the

kin group. The same observation is valid concerning other expenses, which may be requested by the bones in a critical situation: for propitiation of a 'spirit-of-revenge' or some mandiki (Sickness-bringing spirits) even if these fall somewhat outside of the present discussion. (77)

This leads me to note that the primary obligation on traditional Tshwa to 'give to their ancestors' is connected with 'rites of life crises'. The amount of giving in connection with communal rites ('rites of the soil') is insignificant and peripheral. I believe, therefore, that one main reason for inertia in Christian 'giving' lies in the fact that Christian worship is seen as a 'communal ritual' and has not yet entered into the sphere of 'crises rites'. In other words, the question of 'life' or death does not hinge upon the gift to God.

Observations on Tshwa Christian worship as compared to traditional

It is obvious from the preceding parts of this chapter that Christian worship is far richer in intellectual and doctrinal contents than the traditional. The emphasis on Bible reading and preaching with all teaching of doctrine and appeal to the understanding of the worshipper have no counterparts in the Tshwa act of sacrifice. Whatever doctrine taught in the traditional context was given as the moral of stories told by the evening fire, or as mythological background to a crisis as revealed by the diviner. Regular appeals to the intellect for the understanding of mythical and doctrinal foundation of religious beliefs are not found within the traditional pattern.

Symbolic action and teaching, on the other hand, have an insignificant place in Protestant context, while traditional worship abounds with symbolic expressions of contact with the

(77) About these rites, see pp. 14 and 22

world of the spirits. Agricultural Christian rites at planting and harvesting have preserved a similar symbolism as the traditional ones; sacraments are symbolic representations of mystical bonds with the Divine; dramatic presentations at Christmas and Easter are concrete, non-intellectual expressions of faith. But, in the regular Christian worship, it is only prayer, and sometimes the collection, that can be classified as symbolic. As church buildings also in general are very sparsely decorated, it is true that the "service tends to rely almost exclusively on the ear and is in danger of being too intellectualistic". (78)

From a Christian angle, this seems to be one point of potential failure in any attempt to liberate Christian worship from foreign dress. It is even possible that a spiritual superficiality may be covered by such an intellectualistic approach. Taylor's vivid expressions are relevant:

"By confining the Kingdom of God within the protective walls of the conscious and the rational, (The Church) has left untouched the great depth of the subliminal, and unredeemed the glories of the elemental energies of man". (79)

In spite of being foreign to Tabwa culture, regularity seems to have gained a great importance among Tabwa Christians. "To go to church and to worship" (ku embe-na chechi ni ku khosela) is the main rule to be kept by every 'believer'. "If I continue faithfully going to church to worship, I am sure that Jesus will give me eternal life when I die". Such convictions were expressed by several informants.

Thus, we perceive a shift in the meaning of 'worship' itself. Every act of worship traditionally had a special explicit purpose. This would also be true of some special occasions within the Christian context. (80) But, generally,

(78) E. F. Schattschneider, Religion in an African city, p. 136.

(79) J. Taylor, The Primal Vision, p. 21.

(80) See pp. 140-141.

the regular Christian worship develops into a habit which is seen as meritorious in itself, not unlike a similar concept found among many European Christians. With the Christian emphasis on constant 'fellowship with God' (81) as a given, this new meaning of regular worship is readily understood. But it should be pointed out that this stands in sharp contrast to the traditional concept that any contact with the spiritual world outside of what has been called for through the diviner was not only superfluous but actually dangerous! Obviously, the Christian spiritual world is approached less fearfully than the traditional one.

A similar observation was made among the Nyakyusa:

"There is a gulf also between the pagan conception of 'driving off' the shades (ancestral spirits) and the heroes lost by 'breeding over' as men they bring madness and death, and the Christian idea of union with God". (82)

About regular worship, however, some informants added that going to church "by custom only" (*hi kutolovela*) or just "by following somebody there" (*hi xidinga*) may not help at all. 'Faith', and particularly 'strong faith' (*kukholwa ka ntamu*), would be necessary to make church-going effective. 'Dedication' is therefore regarded as an integral part of true worship. (83)

Such 'strong faith' is not based in a doctrinal sense. It is rather "Faith in the power of God". A Christian should believe that God can make his people resist all attacks of evil powers, as the magical dance makes the village "firm" against all evil designs of witches.

This search for God's power may be seen as part of the

(81) Cf. e.g., John 14:1-5; Galatians 2:20; Ephesians 3:19

(82) W. Wilson, *Communal rituals among the Nyakyusa*, p. 187

(83) See p. 135

'quest for life', dealt with in detail in the previous chapter. Traditional Tshwa worship is the condition for attaining the ideal of 'sufficient life', and it has already been indicated that 'life' (wutomi) is also asked for in many instances of Christian worship. Particularly when praying for sick persons, this concept is uppermost in the worshippers' minds.

Going one step further, however, we find in informants' statements that such prayers are mainly regarded as supplementary to hospital treatment. Naturally, herbal and/or magical medicines figure largely in traditional healing, and the crises sacrifices (with prayers for 'life') may therefore be seen as supplementary, too. But there is one fundamental difference: Tshwa rites of life crises aim at removing the cause of the sickness, as this is understood in accordance with traditional custom. The pronounced purpose of Christian prayers for the sick, on the other hand, is to supplement hospital treatment in removing the sickness itself, without bothering about the causes as interpreted in the Tshwa frame of reference. This difference, which I find crucial is the reason why I maintain that no true rites of life crises are found within Christian Tshwa worship. (84)

I find it, therefore, demonstrated that the Christian ideal of "a better life" (wutomi go chuk...) is only partly sought through Christian worship. Both health and fertility of the individual as well as related to improved knowledge. Increase in status and property can be found through cleverness and diligent work, opening the gate to the coveted 'modern living'. Education is, of course, sought through schools or projects of adult education. (85)

What aspects, then, of "the better life" are sought through

(84) This important matter will be further investigated in 'Factors of Health', pp. 203-204.

(85) Cf. pp. 111-112.

Christian worship

Sin against God was seen as a new part of "no-life", as demonstrated in the previous chapter. I suggest that all other ingredients of "no-life" are regarded by Christians as consequences of sin against God. Thus, 'right relationships' with God becomes the key to avoiding 'no-life' and opening the possibilities to reach - through various agencies - "the better life". Obviously, this same 'right relationship' is the necessary condition for attaining 'eternal life'.

The main function of Tshwa Christian worship, then, is to establish and continue such a relationship to God which is regarded as 'right' according to Christian understanding. Various elements of worship services are clearly designed for this purpose, and a direct approach to God through private confession and prayer (often connected with Holy Communion) is seen as the way to restore a broken relationship.

It will be further investigated in the chapter on "Law, Sin and Salvation" ⁽⁸⁶⁾ whether, and to what extent, this stress on 'right relationship' to God has diminished the importance of 'right relationship' with fellow men. In the case of kinsmen, Tshwa Christians obviously do not pay as ~~great attention to relationships as kinsmen call for.~~ 'Right relationship' with God, pursued directly or through the Church, obviates the necessity of seeking 'life' through the channels of senior kinsmen.

It seems, therefore, that Christian worship - and Christian belief on the whole - removes ~~the focus~~ from the vital participation, which was seen as the leading principle of his traditional world-view. ⁽⁸⁷⁾

Even if most Tshwa Christians worship in groups, it is therefore evident that much more stress is laid on the individ-

(86) See pp. 34-36

(87) See p. 106

dual in the Christian context than in traditional worship. Tahwa persons are called as individuals by the Protestant Churches to 'dedicate' themselves. It is the personal response rather than an existing structure that is the foundation of the Christian Tahwa worship.

Thus, 'vital participation' with spirits, people and Nature is the principle of traditional worship, while the individual search - in fellowship with other Christians - for a better, un-ending life is the mark of worship in the Christian context.

8. THE PURSUIT OF HEALTH

Introductory Survey

In the Tshwa quest for life, health is, of course, a primary factor. Wutomi ('life') is often used to denote "health", indicating the great appreciation of this state.

In a modern society, health is deemed the normal state, and acute struggle against sickness is, in the case of an individual, normally a temporary affair. Among the Tshwa, on the other hand, it would seem that full health is more an exception than the rule. It is even possible that certain types of ill-health are not recognized as sickness, as they may be seen as part of daily life. Chronic malaria seems almost universal, and many intestinal parasites sap the strength of Tshwa persons. One mission doctor in the Tshwa area has estimated that at least 80% of the population suffer from some kind of intestinal worm. (1)

All rivers in the Tshwa region are infested with the specific kind of snail which acts as host of bilharzia-producing parasites. As rivers are generally used for bathing, washing of clothes, and as sources for household water, it follows that a majority of the population are suffering from bilharzia, which, i.e., affects the urinary system. There is a possibility that bilharzia may be one cause of the liver cirrhosis ("hardening of the liver"), a lethal illness which is much more common in the Tshwa area than, e.g., in U.S.A. (2)

(1) Hookworm was especially noted.

(2) A mission doctor mentioned that he had seen only three or four cases of this illness during several years of study and practice in U.S.A., but in the mission hospital at Chicupe, mainly serving the Tshwa and Tonga tribes, he had had one hundred cases of liver cirrhosis in one single year.

Syphilis and gonorrhea have spread through contacts with white 'civilisation', and tuberculosis of the lungs has probably increased because of more frequent contacts with people outside of the home sphere, and possibly because of hard mine work. However, tuberculosis has a long history among the Tshwa, having a devastating effect on people whose power of resistance has been weakened by other illnesses and under-nourishment.

Smallpox has a special place among the diseases of the Tshwa. It used to come in the form of terrifying epidemics, and in spite of great efforts in vaccination of the population, smallpox appeared in epidemic form at several instances during the 1900s. It seems now to be decreasing, however, and maybe it is even disappearing among the Tshwa.

Another difficult disease is leprosy (Hansen's disease), and a leprosy camp has long been the only place where persons with this disease could live. (3) Thanks to modern treatment, however, leprosy is now being cured in many cases, and, hopefully, may soon become a dreaded disease of the past.

One more condition which appears to be significant in the health picture of the Tshwa is the common occurrence of hernia. While this is generally not regarded as a disease, the Tshwa think of it in this category.

Similar patterns of sickness would probably be found all over Africa, as testimony from, for instance, Rhodesia and Ghana indicate. "Most people have some chronic ailment and endure it with fortitude as long as they are stably adjusted". (4) Furthermore, certain conditions of living and environment often make these sicknesses more serious than necessary. The pursuit of health, for Tshwa and other Africans,

(3) The leprosy camp at Feles, near Chicunque, run by the Methodist Episcopal Church.

(4) Margaret Field, Search for Security, p. 107

is, therefore, a perpetual struggle against heavy odds.

Malnutrition - or an unbalanced diet - is one ubiquitous reason why various illnesses meet with such weak resistance. (5) Hygienic rules play none, or a very insignificant role in this struggle. The danger of contagion in the case of leprosy and tuberculosis is recognized, and certain isolation of patients seems to be the rule. However, effective isolation is almost impossible in rural conditions.

The spread of intestinal parasites is encouraged where toilet hygiene is limited. A barefoot person therefore invites hook-worm, etc., often nullifying the results of recent hospital treatment. Rivers are often used as toilets. Thus, eggs from the bilharzia parasite, developed within the urinary system, enter the water, and the vicious circle starts afresh.

Some screening of new houses is being done, as a precaution against the malaria mosquito, but, in general, the Tshwa seem to pay only slight attention to this hazard.

Apart from organic illnesses, anxiety figures as a potential reason for many ill-health conditions, which sometimes cannot be specifically diagnosed. No research has been done among the Tshwa in this respect, but observations indicate that Margaret Field's statement in regard to people in Ghana, seeking help at 'shrines' is applicable here also, at least to a large extent:

"The majority of those... complaining of sickness do not appear to have anything organically wrong, but they are in anxiety. They complain of palpitations, pains all over, headache, trembling, giddiness, and darkness in front of their eyes". (6)

The common fear of witchcraft, emerging in frequent allegations, is an indicator of deep-rooted anxieties. Reports from informants also tell of fairly common mental disturbances in the form of depressions and transient acute psychoses.

(5) Cf. P. Sundkler, Bantu Prophets in S. Africa, p. 224

(6) M. Field. op. cit. p. 113

Traditional Conception of illness

What is the nature of sickness?

Folk-medicine everywhere uses rather vague terms in describing sicknesses, referring the complaint to the ailing part of the body, or describing the character of pain. In some cases, "pain all over" may be the only possible expression. This would be true also in countries which are highly developed from an educational viewpoint, while, of course, more specific perception of the actual illness varies with the individual. A definite diagnosis is not only after proper investigation by a qualified person. I find a similar process in the Tshwa community.

Expressions used by sick persons are, for instance:

"Nai na ni hira" ("I have a head") = headache;

"Nai waiwa hi lona lona" ("I am affected by the inside") = stomach trouble;

"Tai na ni xitihavi" ("I have a piercing pain") = often some sickness connected with the chest;

"Ta lona lona nana" ("It is biting in there") = colic pain.

Such ignorance is generally rooted in a limited anatomical knowledge, which ordinary Tshwa persons apparently share with people of all cultures. It is possibly reinforced by the fact that sick persons are often emotionally disturbed and have difficulty in thinking objectively.

In spite of such ignorance, there are definite names of several clearly distinguishable sicknesses, possibly used only after diagnosis by a medical practitioner (n'anga):

<u>kitshanga</u>	(billarria)
<u>xixi</u>	(smallpox)
<u>ribiri</u>	(measles, or scarlet fever)
<u>lona</u>	(syphilis)
<u>xibixala</u>	(gonorrhea)
<u>mba</u> or <u>ndala</u>	(tuberculosis, or any serious lung disease)
<u>h'kanna</u>	(Leprosy - Hansen's disease)
<u>niha</u>	(hernia)
<u>sikira</u>	(epilepsy) etc.

Nevertheless, these names do not say what the sickness consists of. They are rather names of symptoms. It is, in fact, apparent that Tswana have a very slight interest in the "What?" question.

Two general observations, however, should be made as potential answers to the question "What is it that ails me?":

a. Blood is generally seen as the seat of life. Therefore, it figures as a primary factor in cases of illness.

One very common expression is "vanhu ya babyako hakuva nkhotse ni nyama zi hashene" (= "people who are sick because the blood and the flesh do not agree"). This is used for sickness in general and would indicate a conflict between the body and its life-giving source. Often this conflict is acutely felt when "the blood is boiling" - one expression for fever. (7)

b. Several conditions are connected with a "snake" (nyoka) which is believed to live in the abdomen. A similar belief seems to be shared by some neighbouring peoples, for instance the Yaka and Loya. (8) Serious diarrhoea (gastro-enteritis) among children is called nyokani (= lit. "the little snake"), and is ascribed to the activities of such a snake, as well as certain convulsions which, we are reminded by medical authorities, "at their age are commonly caused by round-worms". (9)

Tswana also recognise a "special" snake, causing epileptic fits (nyoka ya aichane). How this snake enters the body, and why it goes into certain persons and not into all, seem to be matters of uncertainty.

The tendency among Tswana not to be preoccupied with the "What?" - question of illness distinguishes their conception of illness clearly from that of modern medicine. While the explanation that "bacteria entering the body make a person

(7) Cf. E. & J.D. Krige, Heads of a Rain-queen, p. 212

(8) D. Earthy, Yaka Women, p. 62-63; Krige, ib. cit. 212

(9) M. Field, ib. cit. p. 119

sick" is of fundamental value in modern medical treatment, the two main questions for the Tshwa remain:

- a) "Why did the bacterias enter?", and
- b) "By whom were they sent?"

Why does sickness come?

The commonsense of the Tshwa tells them that some sicknesses have perfectly natural and obvious causes. Dirty water or spoiled food are seen as potential causes of stomach complaints. Mukhuhlwane (several types and degrees of influenza, and often one stage of malaria) is blamed on sudden changes of weather and temperature. The relationship between heavy drinking and physical weakness is fairly generally recognized. The fact that contagion is understood as one cause of leprosy and tuberculosis has already been mentioned, but it is significant that no proper isolation seems to be called for in the case of smallpox or scarlet fever.

As the diviner/medical practitioner (n'anga) is approached on behalf of the sick person, however, "natural" causes will very seldom be found. The diviner's verdict moves rather within a different category of values, often finding the cause of sickness in a broken relationship of some kind. This may be the relation to the kin-group as a whole, in its capacity of custodian of human values expressed as "taboo regulations". Or it may be an offence against the 'right relationship' with a certain person, either living or dead. I will refer to the first of these alleged relationships as "breaking of taboos", and to the second type as "sinning".

Prohibitions against eating certain kinds of food are enforced by the assumption that such eating would cause immediate sickness (unspecified). Thus, e.g., children, and women before childbirth, are not allowed to eat eggs. Liver is called "the meat of the elders" (nyama ya madota) and thus strictly reserved for persons of that category.

Several taboos in connection with the burial and ritual purification after death are potential causes of illness,

apart from the fact that the power of resistance against any disease is for every kin-member at this time at low ebb. (10)

The most common sickness-bringing taboos connected with death are, however, tied to the property of the deceased. All things owned by him must be properly purified and appropriately divided among his right heirs. Anyone breaking this taboo, is automatically under the curse of xivenze (an expression used concerning improperly inherited articles), and will fall ill.

Within the sphere of sexual transgressions, there are two different kinds of taboos, or rather two types of consequences:

Certain taboos bring sickness, or even death, on the offender himself, while others bring a curse upon the family (mate or children) of the trespasser.

In the first group, we find the prohibition against sexual relations with a menstruating woman. Hernia (siha), certain urethral trouble, or swelling of penis or testicles (kenze) are regarded as direct consequences of breach against this taboo.

The second taboo of this kind concerns relations with a woman who has had an abortion or who has not yet been ritually purified after the death of her husband. These two types of illicit relations are believed to lead to the worst kind of illness (siha), sometimes called siha ya liphangisi, where death will inevitably follow. (11)

Among the taboos regarding relations in the offender's family, one is the severe prohibition against incest (siwaka). (12)

(1) See "Death and Life Eternal", p. 244

(11) This taboo is well-known also to some neighbouring peoples. Among the Ila, 5 percent of the deaths of men during a certain period were attributed to this most dreaded disease. (Krieger, op. cit. p. 221)

(12) See "The Social Aspects of the Taboo", p. 45

It is also taboo for a man to have relations with another woman during the time immediately after birth, while the wife is "Mungoza". (13) Similarly, it is taboo for a woman to have intercourse with another man while she is yet nursing. Breaches of both taboos will bring sickness on the child.

The authority of the n'anga (diviner/medical practitioner) and his treatment is upheld by the notion that disobedience against his regulations will bring dreadful consequences. Particularly in cases where the n'anga has been requested to provide a 'medicine' which is assumed to work on another person for a special, sometimes dangerous purpose, the regulations must be followed in minute detail.

One interesting aspect of such a taboo is that the punishment seems to be mental derangement, and not primarily physical illness.

On the borderline between taboo and "sin" we find certain prohibitions connected with the state of 'heat' (kuhila). (14)

Some of these taboos (ziyilayila), particularly those connected with leath or sexual transgressions, have certain social implications. On the other hand, broken social relationships, understood as causing sickness and other misfortunes, are generally referred to by Tswana as kuonha ("sinning"). It emerges, in fact, that "sin" for the Tswana is mainly to be found in the social realm. (15)

Among the most dangerous sickness-producing sins are anger, adultery, theft, and - of course - the practice of witchcraft.

(13) The new mother remains in a marginal state until the rite of "strengthening the child" (kuvirima) has been performed. This is done some months after the birth, and is fundamentally a confirmation of the husband's fatherhood.

(14) As the concept of 'heat' will be dealt with in the chapter on "Law, Sin and Salvation", few details are taken up here.

(15) See further "Law, Sin and Salvation", pp. 225 ff.

Anger often produces a serious break-up of relationships between individuals or groups. This danger among Tshwa, however, usually follows certain lines of the kinship structure, and it is uncommon that it reverses the direction. When, for instance, a father is angry with his child - even if the 'child' is an adult - this is regarded as part of normal procedure. Such anger would not, as a rule, have any dangerous consequences. But if, on the other hand, a grown-up child is angry with his father, there is danger at hand. This may cause bitterness (xiviti) in the father's heart.

It is easily perceived that filial anger in a patrilineal society would potentially disrupt the social structure, and it is believed that the ancestral spirits "see the tears of the wronged father" and respond by sending sickness on the angry child.

Adultery in Tshwa vocabulary (wubwayi) does not mean "extramarital relations". It is not seen primarily as a sexual sin, but rather in the category of theft. Thus, intercourse between a married man and an unattached woman is not classified as adultery. But when a man has relations with somebody else's wife, for whom nzhowolo (bride-wealth) has been paid, a serious breach of tribal law is taking place.

Relationships in two directions, at least, are disturbed or broken through adultery. The injured party, i.e. the cuckolded husband and the kin-group of the woman, can be propitiated along structured lines, by paying of an obligatory fine (wukode). Furthermore, any child resulting from the relationship will be counted as belonging to the injured husband. But there is also a curse hanging over the offenders. If the woman in question becomes pregnant, she will have a very difficult birth, and the man may bring sickness and death upon his own family.

All theft obviously demonstrates a spirit which makes normal relationships impossible. This crime has for long been hated among the Tshwa, and one of the strong injunctions that informants were given in their childhood was "not to steal".

...and severely punished by the chief, (16)
...the superhuman sanctions
...to result in sickness.
...the epidemic disease of small-
...without
...Therefore -
...Traditional cure"
...It appears that
...as a result of unconfessed sins
...like theft, murder, adultery, or the
...of sickness.

How was the sickness cured?

The main problem in connection with traditional con-
...the most important, as all
...begin by ascertaining what power is
...translated into Tahua i-tom:
...("Himani a wu dayako?").
...the sickness may be alive or dead, a
...there is usually a per-
...This "sending" of
...an explicit sin or breaking
...a man's anger, or a
...casting a spell
...a certain 'sin of omission',
...give his mother-in-law
...share.

The main cause, however, of sickness belongs to the un-
...along with spirit-
...spirits (mandiki),
...the sky (Tili), the day all figures in the
...procedure.

(16) "How was the sickness cured?", p. 251.

When a child shivers from fever (often because of malaria), this is usually taken as a special sign from the ancestors (tinguave). Recurring dreams about dead people are interpreted as messages. When the sickness coincides with certain conflicts within the kin group, it is unfailingly interpreted as ancestral punishment. It can be assumed that the diviner is aware of kinship tensions and open conflicts.

Nevertheless, it is held that the ancestors do not, as a rule, send death upon their descendants. It is in their own interest that their living relatives should stay alive and healthy in order to perform the necessary sacrifices. If there is a serious break of kinship law, however, death sent upon the culprit may be divined as issuing from the ancestors. "The excommunication must be removed".

Misfukwa (sing. mupfukwa) are spirits of dead, who are thought to take up because of certain 'medicines' and are bent on destroying entire kin-groups outside of their own, in which they have found reason to grieve. Thus, they are "spirits-of-revenge". (17)

The first sign of mupfukwa activity in a village is sickness, often according to the set pattern of two or three persons falling ill at the same time. If such persons are brought to hospital, "they may get welling there and get better. But, as they come back home, the sickness flares up again, until they call for a n'anga". If a n'anga is not consulted very soon, it is feared that sickness of this pattern inevitably will lead to death, as a mupfukwa has come to kill. (18)

When it happens that several persons of the same family or kin-group die in quick succession, the suspicion seems

(17) See "Tsimba traditional beliefs", p. 20

(18) In this respect, these spirits are unlike the mat-diki, which are not believed to kill.

automatically to fall upon mipfhuk activity, and again a n'anga must be called in for urgent appropriate treatment, so that further deaths might be avoided.

The diagnostic pattern indicating sicknesses caused by mandiki, on the other hand, is not as distinct as in the case of spirits-of-revenge. As these foreign, possessive, and sickness-bringing spirits ⁽¹⁹⁾ are believed to come in search for a new host, their presence is not seen in lethal sicknesses or death. It is not a question of punishing because of a broken relationship, but establishing a new one.

Symptoms characteristic in many countries of spirit possession - hysteria, pronounced anxiety, continuous shivering and other motor excitement ⁽²⁰⁾ - give rise to the bulk of mandiki diagnoses. It appears that also other sicknesses ascribed to mandiki, as, for instance, acute lameness of a leg, or "pain all over", may belong to a psycho-somatic category. A sudden onset of the sickness is one of the criteria casting a suspicion on mandiki as the active agents.

The majority of misfortunes, including accidents, illness and death, are according to my informants usually blamed on the activity of witches (balabali). On the other hand, few special categories of sicknesses or symptoms can be discerned in this case. Apparently, any conflict situation, either in the kin-group or in the neighbourhood, lends itself to a witchcraft allegation. I have found only one specific symptom - festering sores - leading the thought more surely than anything else to the dreaded activity of witches.

When, finally, no illness is regarded as hopeless, traditional Tshwa see the Tilo (Tilo) as the active agent. "Wait for Tilo to act! Maybe you will live, maybe you will die...." When a sickness has thus been declared "from Tilo", no treatment is, in general, of any avail.

(19) See "Traditional Tshwa beliefs", p. 42

(20) Cf. H. Field, op. cit., p. 96, 97

The same applies, in general, to such mental disturbances that are said to be from the Sky Power. The expression "bilwe hi lipapa la Tilo" ("He has been hit by the wing of the Sky") is often used about persons who display symptoms of mental illness, simultaneously implying that no cure is possible.

Observations concerning traditional concepts of illness

As we keep probing the traditional Tshwa frame of reference, now in connection with their "pursuit of health", it can be clearly established that ill-health is, in general terms, seen as punishment for certain acts, which are conceived of as evil. Illness does not "just happen". Both in purely social terms, and where certain spiritual agents are involved, the majority of illness cases are traced back to some broken relationship. Thus, sickness is commonly understood as socially conditioned, based upon some 'social sin'.

Most reasons for sickness are obviously known to the Tshwa only post factum, as revealed through the divining bones. It also emerges from my material that the guilt associated with the sickness by the diviner is often felt because of the actual sickness, rather than because of the committed sin. In other words, the current 'evil' action is sometimes not clearly experienced as 'sin' until some sickness raises the question as to potential guilt. (21)

Undoubtedly, there can exist a powerful inter-dependence between moral teaching and fear of consequences, even working completely in the subconscious. Particularly in cases of serious breaches of taboo, it is probable that the fear of the dreaded consequences actually produce the expected sickness. A quotation from the Mende in Sierra Leone is appropriate:

(21) See "Law, Sin and Salvation", p. 212

"..... the whole process of moral education of the Mende, in this instance on sex-relations, produces in them a built-in mechanism which causes the illness. That is to say that their conscience disapproves of their action and they fall ill". (22)

Particularly in certain organic illnesses, material or 'natural' causes may be perceived by the Tshwa. But my research leads me to the conclusion that such 'natural' causes are considered as secondary at best. This agrees with findings among many other peoples of Africa, as this statement from Ghana confirms:

"The Zande concept of dual causation therefore insists that, in all particular cases of disease, there is likely to be a social, as well as a natural, factor involved: and that, in some cases, the social factor is dominant". (23)

Margaret Field gives several practical examples of such social causation, exposing the role of conflict as the malignant agent:

"Simple-hearted people are prone to fall sick when disappointed at finding they have misplaced their trust. Several men came, sick and worrying, because wives, whom they liked wanted to leave them...

Kinship disputes even more than marital disharmony emerges as a potent cause of that anxiety which destroys the sense of physical well-being...

"When a sick child is brought to the shrine, the priest invariably seeks for strife between the parents, a circumstance in which, it is held, no young child can thrive". (24)

As we thus confirm social causation of sickness in Africa, the remarkable fact is that this is the traditional conception of disease. Even if we do not attribute the same

(22) H. Sawyerr, "Sacrifice" in Dickson-Ellingworth, p. 71

(23) F. M. Selbourne, "Healing as a psychosomatic event" in Witchcraft and Healing, Cf. M. Wilson, Communal Rituals of the Nyakyusa, p. 101

(24) M. Field, op. cit. pp. 114-115, 119

.....

psychological and physiological understanding of psychosomatic sickness causation to a Tshwa n'anga as to a "Western" physician, it seems that so-called primitive medicine in this respect has been somewhat ahead of developments within medical science. The case for psychosomatic causation of several illnesses is now well established in modern medicine, but this is a fairly recent development in comparison with traditional African practice. (25)

I suggest that at least as far as the Tshwa are concerned, the prominence of social causes in popular understanding of diseases arises from the basic need for unity within the society. Every conflict between members of the community (kin-group or neighbourhood), is a potentially destructive element, of the same order as disease, and consequently, both are a threat to the unity of society.

Even if Tshwa would not always distinguish between the cause of sickness and the active "sending" agent, it is helpful for our further investigation to note that this agent is very often understood in spiritual terms. Therefore, traditional cure means, in most cases, some dealings with superhuman powers. (With special reference to 'right relationships' with the ancestral spirits, Sundkler's discovery in Tanzania is illuminating:

"I was interested to find, among the colleges of Central Africa, that their verb 'to send', okutamba, also means 'to sacrifice'". (26)

After an investigation of the role of the diviner/medical practitioner among the Tshwa, we will demonstrate how traditional conceptions of disease influence the curing of illness. We will then compare these statements with modern medical activities among the Tshwa, while seeking to establish the attitudes of Christians in their pursuit of health.

(25) Cf. C.H.O. "Sickness behaviour among the Yoruba" in "Witchcraft and Healing", p. 57

(26) B. Sundkler, op. cit. p. 221

The role of diviners and curers

The n'anga

In the maze of social relationships with their great conflict potential, most peoples have found that some authority with decisive power is vitally needed. A chief deals with overt crimes and such social conflicts that develop into blows. But he is not capable to enter the field of hidden conflict or mystical events. The indispensable key to this sphere is the diviner.

A diviner (muhlahlavi ~~wa~~ tihi ~~lit~~ lit: "the one who reads the bones") usually combines his divinatory role with work as medical practitioner. He is thus a n'anga. But it would be unfair - to the n'anga - to compare him with a European physician, in his different roles as diagnostician and performer of the cure. A Tshwa n'anga is more like the hub of wheel, being at the centre of all critical events, private or public, in the neighbourhood. His office is also, in a structural sense, the upholder of the community and its morals. The ideal n'anga is the champion for 'sufficient life' for the society as a whole. The Tshwa express this eloquently in their proverb: "Life' is to be found at the bones" (Watani o kumeka tihlolweni).

It is readily seen that such an ideal picture is found in few individuals, but the Tshwa assumption is nevertheless that a diviner is to be trusted, until proved wrong or unreliable. The institution of divination answers to a deeply felt need among the Tshwa, and this need evidently removes some natural hesitation as to the personal qualities of the incumbent. The diviner/n'anga operates to a large extent in a sphere which for a lay person is veiled in mystery. He is also, usually, approached when the client is in a state of emotional affect.

It is at such impressionable times of personal crisis that the diviner reminds the Tshwa of their time-honoured tribal customs and beliefs, and whenever anything new is

added to the wealth of traditional beliefs, it will come through the gate of the diviner.

Speaking in a similar vein about the key to understanding the great importance of the diviner in Ndembu society in Zambia, Turner says:

"Since diviners are consulted on many occasions, it is clear that their role as upholders of tribal morality and rectifiers of disturbed social relationships - both structural and contingent - is a vital one in a society without centralized political institutions". (27)

The classical Tshwa divination is made with "the bones" (tihlclo; etymologically derived from the verb ku hlola = to examine). The diviner's collection of astragalus bones from several different animals, plus certain sea shells and some pieces of special wood, are thrown out on a grass-mat, and the diviner points with his rod, explaining what the bones say. Every "throw" is preceded by a question directed to the bones. Each possible category of people in a village or lineage, living or dead, is represented by a special bone or shell. (28) There are four possible positions of each bone, every one having its special meaning, and the answer to each question is determined by this position, as well as the position of the 'bones' in relation to each other.

Naturally, the diviner also uses his intimate knowledge of people in the neighbourhood, and his personal intuition. Thus, the divination is never reduced to an automatic procedure. Turner's observation illuminates this aspect:

"Diviners try to elicit from their clients responses which give them clues to the current tensions in their groups of origin. Divination, therefore, becomes a form of social analysis, in the course of which hidden conflicts are revealed so that they may be dealt with by traditional and institutional procedures". (29)

(27) V. Turner, The Drums of Affliction, p. 51

(28) Ancestral spirits (tinguluve), e.g., are represented by the astragalus of wild pig (also called nguluve); chiefs by a sheep's astragalus; a piece of khanyi-wood stands for dangerous medicines, etc. Cf. Junod, II. 543-548

There are also other types of divination among the Tshwa. The kind of n'anga who operates under the influence of mandiki (nyamusoro) divines in a dissociated state of mind. He is said to "catch" a certain spirit, which introduces itself as "the spirit of ~~me~~-and-so", speaking in a completely different voice - and sometimes a different language - than that of the diviner. This type of divination is of particular use when activities of mandiki, or mijhaka (spirits-of-revenge) are suspected. The "caught" spirit is then believed to be the sickness-or death-bringing agent, and he tells the clients (through the diviner) what they must do, in order to rid themselves of the affliction.

When the cause of crisis has been established, the diviner/n'anga proceeds to explain what ritual and medical cures are necessary. Some informants stated that it often happens that the diviner refers the actual treatment to another n'anga (according to the message of his 'bones'), particularly if someone is known as a 'specialist' in certain illnesses.

Herbalists

Apart from the divining institution and the traditional n'anga, there are also certain persons, mostly old men or women, who are known as possessors of special knowledge of medicinal herbs and plants. Such herbalists are often consulted, and some of them are recognized as 'specialists' on the cure of certain diseases. (30)

Traditional Cures

It has been demonstrated that most afflictions are seen by Tshwa as having a social cause, and sometimes a secondary

(29) V. Turner. op. cit. p. 10

(30) Such herbalists are sometimes used openly in Christian context. See pp. 200-201

"natural" causation. It is to be expected that traditional cures attempt to eliminate both types of causes, with stress on the social, in order to re-establish 'life' to the individual or the community.

We find that traditional cures can be classified in the following categories:

1. Prophylactic treatment, which primarily addresses itself to defence against witchcraft attacks;
2. Restoration of broken relationships, either social or with superhuman Powers. This is doubtless the most important category, without which no other treatment is believed to have any lasting effect. Sometimes this cure aims at establishing a new relationship, and in certain instances it is ever seen as prophylactic;
3. Purification rites, which may be seen as complementary to the former category; and
4. Medicines.

Prophylactic measures

Among all peoples, elementary preventive medicine is taught in the family. In Tshwa society, this would include - on top of general admonitions to look out for snakes and to be careful in crossing the river - instruction in Tshwa customs and taboos. Many of these were traditionally taught to the girl at the time of her first menstruation, when her father's sister (nahani) stayed with her several days in a special hut. The boys were given similar instruction, partly by their fathers, partly in their initiation camp (gungu), where circumcision was accompanied by long periods of teaching. The instruction in customs and taboos was always tied together with explanation of respective punishments.

Many kinds of sicknesses could obviously not be avoided by knowledge alone. Against ancestors, mandiki or revenging spirits, no prophylactic measures could avail. But a certain defense against witches appears to be possible. The individual may be protected by an amulet (xitahungule), which is

specially prepared by a n'anga (medical practitioner) in each individual case, and may contain nails and hair of the person in question, together with certain magical substances.

No Tshwa village is complete without a n'anga having surrounded it with his magic fence. This "strengthening of the village" (ke tivisa mati) is done as the n'anga digs down his medicines at certain spots around the village, which is then regarded as immune against ^Cwitches' attacks.

The most common prophylactic treatment in modern medicine is vaccination. This may usually be regarded as a "white man's invention", but it is claimed that the Tshwa had certain medicines used as a kind of vaccination. Particularly when children were going on a trip, the mother would use her phonjo - the term for such preventive medicine - as an ointment, in order to prevent any sickness to fall on her children while they were away.

Restoration of broken relationships with spirits

The three types of spirits which regularly enter into the diagnostic picture are tinguluve (ancestral spirits), zirbhukwa ('spirits-of-revenge'), and mandiki (foreign, possessive and sickness bringing spirits).

When the divinatory process indicated that relationships with tinguluve are broken, whatever sacrifices that may be required are, in general, promptly arranged, or ritually promised. These rites have been described in some detail in the chapter on "Worship, sacrifice and sacraments", (31)

Urgency may be felt even more strongly when spirits-of-revenge (zirbhukwa) are alleged to have sent the affliction. The ritual treatment will then proceed according to the pattern described earlier in this dissertation. (32)

(31) See pp. 117-119

(32) See "Tshwa traditional beliefs", p. 21

The three main items in this rite: (a) a sum of money; (b) a goat; (c) a girl to be dedicated, have no visible bearing on treatment of the actual affliction. But they can all be surmised to play a role in restoring the relationship with mupfhukwa, the girl being the constant guarantee from the afflicted kin-group of no more attacks of witchcraft, or theft.

When the diagnosis has been confirmed that foreign, possessive, sickness-bringing spirits (mandiki) have settled on a certain person, it is urgent that the new relationship between mandiki and their new host be regularized as quickly as possible. This is done mainly through the kutwazisa rite, also described earlier. (33)

This 'treatment' leads the patient into a completely new type of life, with new customs and obligations. It even gives him a new religion, as his mandiki now take precedence over his own tinguluve. It is believed, however, that no more sickness or distress will be brought on this host by the mandiki as long as this special relationship is observed.

Confession

Similar to cases of spiritual sickness-bringing agents, urgency may be felt also when only living persons are involved, because the curse (kubamba) allegedly accompanying some breach of law or taboo is greatly feared. Such confession is often made as a "prophylactic" measure.

As the spoken word of confession is believed to have the power of removing the potential curse, it is possible that confession was traditionally used at a great number of offenses. I have recorded five occasions, on which confession is regarded as obligatory in the traditional context:

- (1) After adultery.
- (2) At childbirth, if a woman has been adulterous;

(33) See "Tahwa traditional beliefs", p. 46

been broken because of filial anger (36) is made at the rite called kuphahlelana ("to sacrifice for each other"). Usually, two hens are killed at this ceremony, and beer (or liquor) is shared by the two parties. The younger - a son or daughter - confesses his guilt, and the senior asks his ancestral spirits to remove the curse resting on his child because of his own bitterness (xiviti). It is obvious that the ancestral spirits are believed to listen to this confession, as well as the senior kinsman.

(5) When smallpox comes

A certain medicine called phesa was used to relieve smallpox. This is a fluid taken from the stem of a special bush, used for anointing the eyes of a person suffering from smallpox, or for rectal injection.

But, as it is held that smallpox is a direct punishment for sins, confession is the obligatory and decisive treatment. The elders of the village come to the sick-bed (evidently without realizing the danger of contagion), or to the parents of a sick child, to hear the confession. This may reveal anger and jealousy and sometimes crimes, but, according to informants, it invariably included acts of witchcraft, and often sexual transgressions. (37) In one case, I was told, the gravest sin had been incest, and it was believed by the informant that the confession could not remove the curse of such a terrible sin. 'But confession of witchcraft had often made smallpox turn away from the village'.

Even at the ceremony, it is usual that the confessing person takes water in his mouth and spits it out on the ground with the "pha"-sound before making his statement.

(36) "Xiviti" is explained on p. 170

(37) Cf. statement from Zionist Churches: "No confession is regarded as complete until sexual transgressions are mentioned". B. Zundkier, op. cit. 11

This would indicate that the confession is made before both living and dead. (See also below, on "Spitting"). (38)

Not only the Tshwa connect smallpox with superhuman action. In several parts of the world, this disease is seen as a terrible divine visitation. This has been found in India, and similar beliefs are reported from Nigeria, where the Yoruba hold that smallpox is sent as punishment by the god Shopanna:

"Most people recommended palm wine, both as drink for the patient who, they said, should not be offered water (!), and to placate the spirits of the smallpox deity. Some advocated a sacrifice to Shopanna, an offering of beans cooked with corn to be placed outside with the palm wine. (39)

It has not yet emerged through my research whether the Tshwa regard smallpox as coming from Filo (The Sky Power), or from the ancestors. But the disease is clearly seen as arising from the mystical realm. Although this apparently is a universal concept, the Tshwa method of treating it through confession has not been specifically found among other peoples, except the Ronga and Tsonga of southern Mozambique. (40)

(6) Observations on Confession

In confession, the factor of catharsis is obviously an active ingredient. As reducing fear and feelings of guilt, such catharsis may mean a turning point in sickness and may bring a healthy atmosphere to a village, otherwise possibly rent by distrust and mutual accusations. This observation applies, of course, to a large extent to all types of restored relationships.

(38) Cf. M. Wilson, Communal Rituals of the Nyakyusa, p. 108

(39) D.S.O. Maclean, "Hospitality or Healer?" in Human Organization, Vol. 25:2, 1966, 131-139

(40) H.A. Junod, op. cit., II, 465

Confession of sins seems to be used all over Africa as a means of restoring normal and healthy relationships between kinsmen and neighbours. The power of the spoken word to remove anger and hidden resentments is regarded as vital. (41) The power of emotional release through confession in depth has been dramatically described in the case of an Eskimo shaman treating his patient. (42)

The matter of confession, in traditional and Christian context, will be further investigated in "Law, Sin and Salvation". (43)

Ceremonial spitting

A further method of removing the curse when a certain relationship has been broken is to "spit".

My main example of such ceremonial spitting comes from the life of such young people who are dedicated to a spirit-of-revenge (muufhukwa). Usually, a boy from this spirit's own kin, and one or several girls from afflicted kin-groups are set apart to take care of the spirit's hut. (44) Their special standing is emphasized by a rule that nobody is allowed to scold or beat them. If somebody should transgress this law - even if the children have deserved a spanking - he is forced to spit the boy or girl in the head, as an act of reconciliation, or else the spirit is believed to send punishment.

One informant, who was himself dedicated in this way as a young boy, continues:

(41) H. Wilson, op. cit. pp. 160-161. Evans-Pritchard, op. cit. p. 193. Cf. V. Turner, op. cit. p. 49.

(42) Rasmussen, "An Eskimo Shaman purifies a sick person", in Janssens (ed.), Reader in Comparative Religion, pp. 410-414.

(43) See page 235 ff.

(44) See "Traditional Tshwa beliefs", pp. 52-53.

"I could not beat anybody else, either. I was told severely not to hit anybody. I only sat. I was not even allowed to carry a stick. But, if another boy hit me, they would tell him, go and spit!"

It is probable that ceremonial spitting is used in other contexts, too. Thus, the spitting of water into the face of the sacrificial animal, ⁽⁴⁵⁾ the spitting of beer on to the altar at times of sacrifice, and even the spitting of water before a confession would seem to have the same fundamental meaning of reconciliation.

There is another suggestion, coming from the Nyakyusa, that such ceremonial spitting is, in fact, a symbolic act of confession, "bringing out all anger that is within". ⁽⁴⁶⁾ The spitting would then, to the eye, have the same role as the voice of confession has to the ear.

Dealing with witchcraft

When preventive measures have proved ineffective, and witchcraft activity has been divined as the cause of some misfortune, the first measure is to establish the identity of the witch. The culprit may be pointed out by the divining bones or one is "smelled out" (*kufemba*) at a session where the *nyamuro* ("mandiki-doctor") dramatically selects his victim. There may also be a further trial by drinking a strong potion (*munwa mponzo*), and the guilty one is, it is said, felled to the ground by the magic drink. This last method, however, appears to be little used nowadays.

In treating witchcraft, Tahwa society balances on the borderline between restoration and purification. In other words: the primary desire is to restore the culprit to normal social usefulness, by some act of reconciliation, but the evil in witchcraft appears to be almost irredeemable, and the

(45) "Worship, Sacrifice and Sacrament", p. 120

(46) M. Wilson, *op. cit.* pp. 160-161

community therefore needs to rid itself of the abomination. It is probable that some gradation of evil takes place and guides the treatment.

In ancient times, a condemned noyi (witch) was killed by being impaled, or forced to hang herself. ⁽⁴⁷⁾ Nowadays, if separation (purification) is deemed imperative, she may, I am told, be expelled from her kin and forced to live a pitiful existence, probably dying in utter loneliness and misery.

The usual modern treatment, however, is an act of reconciliation. When the witch is "known", the divination process also reveals why she is causing the trouble. The alleged witch is then visited by the afflicted party, with money or other gifts according to the diviner's message. The proper gift is handed over, against a solemn promise from the witch to remove her spell.

Purification rites

It has been demonstrated that Tshwa understanding of contagion does not agree with that of modern medicine, although the two sometimes may coincide. A concept similar to contagion, however, which may be described as a "communal curse", gave rise to a need for joint purification. I have noted such ceremonies in connection with "death contamination" and after a smallpox epidemic. Purification after death within the kin will be described in detail in the chapter on "Death and Life Eternal", ⁽⁴⁸⁾ and will, consequently, not be taken up here.

Purification after smallpox takes the form of a thorough cleansing of the village, and a sacrifice. The whole village is swept, inside houses and outside. All inhabitants are ceremonially washed in medicated water. All used clothes of persons who have been ill are then taken to a "crossroad", where they are burnt together with the gathered dust and filth from

(47) Cf. H.A. Junod, op. cit. II, p. 534

(48) See pp. 247-248

the village, plus the medicines left over after the washing. A sacrificial killing of a hen or a goat takes place on the same spot. Unfortunately, informants have not been able to tell, to whom this sacrifice is made.

The symbolic elements of cleansing are obvious in this rite. Furthermore, one observes that the "curse" is left at a crossroads, where any passer-by may pick it up and carry it away.

There are probably other significant elements in this rite of purification. I would suppose that the extinguishing of all fires and rekindling them again, as reported from the Nyakyusa, ⁽⁴⁹⁾ also takes place among the Tshwa.

Medicines

In several of the methods of treatment already referred to, medicines have been mentioned as one ingredient. Obviously, the "natural" causes of sickness must be dealt with in a different way from the "social", and it should be recognized that several Tshwa herbal medicines have a curing effect on certain illnesses. On the other hand, many 'medicines' in Tshwa context do not have any counterpart in scientific medical treatment. 'Medicines' for luck in hunting, fishing or job-seeking fall in this category. There are also the sinister 'medicines', alleged to cause a person's spirit to wake up after death as a mupfukwa. ⁽⁵⁰⁾

In the Tshwa idiom, 'medicine' is muri. But most commonly, informants refer to various kinds of medicines as "matluka" (leaves) or "tininya" (trees; branches). This affirms that most traditional medicines are leaves, herbs, or parts of certain trees, as, e.g., roots or bark. "Magic substances" play a definite role, and I should imagine that their predominance

(49) M. Wilson, op. cit. p. 117

(50) See more on "spirits-of-revenge", p. 48

varies from one n'anga to another. Certain products from the sea are used in this way, as well as blood and other parts from animals.

The application of Tshwa medicines is made orally, rectally, or by insertion under the skin (kutlhavu). Anointing with medicine is also heard of, but insertion ("injection") figures most commonly in reports.

One indispensable part of treatment with medicine is the spoken word, through which the n'anga infuses the necessary power and "tells the medicine" how to cure the patient. This is probably a common concept in Africa, as confirmed from the Yoruba:

"Incantations must always accompany the taking of a medicine since the ingredients are powerless in themselves. Without the spoken word, their potency is never activated, they will remain inert, useless material objects. The incantation makes explicit the purpose and power of the mixture and expresses precisely why its constituent parts have been chosen". (51)

Finally, it should be remembered that some Tshwa herbalists specialise in the use of certain herbal medicines without openly utilizing magic.

Changes wrought through Christian and other outside influence

Hospitals and hygiene

In the chapter on how Christianity was introduced among the Tshwa, (52) it was said that "Protestant Christianity presented itself to the Tshwa with the three-pronged approach of 'Teaching, Preaching and Healing'". In the beginning, the healing activities were haphazard, according to the most crying need, and severely limited because of lack of qualified

(51) C.H.D. Meekins, "Sickness behaviour among the Yoruba" in Witchcraft and Healing, p. 37

(52) See further on historical development, p. 68

personnel. But with the coming of the first medical doctor to the Methodist Episcopal Church, in 1910, medical work became more regular. Mission hospitals have since been constructed at Chicunque, near Maxixe, Nhaloi near Massinga, and at Cambine. Clinics have been established at some other places, at least temporarily. Maternity wards are included in all hospital units.

The Portuguese government has established several hospitals and medical posts in the Tshwa area, with an important regional hospital in the town of Inhambane. Medical centres (*centros de saúde*) are now situated in Maxixe, Homoine, Morrumbene, Massinga and Vilanculos, i.e. all administrative centres of the district, while medical posts and maternity wards are to be found in many different parts of the area. (53)

The teaching of hygiene and elementary preventive medicine was begun early within the scope of Protestant missions, but it can hardly be said that any regular teaching of Public Health is now part of the work of the Churches.

One form in which practical medicine is taught to the public through Church agencies is the baby clinic on certain mission stations, which have become popular meeting places for mothers in the vicinity. This is where, once a week, mothers and babies are offered postnatal care, and much practical advice (from ready recipients).

Probably, a great deal of hygienic knowledge and elementary understanding of preventive medicine finds its way to the Tshwa area through the many thousands of men who take part in "First aid" courses in the Transvaal mines.

Present attitudes to sickness

As we begin picking what present attitudes are in connection with the pursuit of health, we are reminded again of the

(53) Atlas de Moçambique, p. 35

great number of variables according to individual background, exposure to outside influence, and personal experience of sickness and healing. What we can establish are certain trends, patterned by the opinions of informants, correlated with my own experience and outside anthropological observations. In the main, these trends refer to 'believers', although it is recognized that the border-line between Christians and non-Christians in these respects is rather fluid, as non-Christians are continuously being influenced from outside of their own culture in matters of hygiene and treatment of sickness.

No doubt, many more Tshwa nowadays know "natural" causes of sickness than in the past. The knowledge of bacteria is spreading, although in popular thought these sickness-bringing agents are more associated with visible dirt than with microbes. One informant, for instance, was convinced that tuberculosis bacteria had entered many people's lungs through the dust stirred up during digging or plowing. In water, visible contaminations may cause concern, while bacterias or microscopic parasites are more difficult to believe in. However, boiling of water before drinking appears to be fairly common, especially in Christian families.

The role of vaccination against smallpox is readily accepted, even if this sickness is still generally regarded as a special punishment for sins. One informant affirmed that "vaccination does not help at all, if the person has committed sins like witchcraft or adultery".

The venereal diseases syphilis (haya) and gonorrhea (albhoketa) are commonly associated with contagion through sexual contact, although one informant insisted that syphilis can be transferred "by using the same soap". They are often referred to as "sicknesses of adultery".

Of the traditional "natural" causes, the "snake" (nyoka) still has an important place. It is said that nyokani ("the little snake") term for gastro-enteritis and/or convulsions in infants) can only be treated by Tshwa doctors (tin'angai),

as it is caused by a 'snake'. Mothers who in spite of this bring their small children to hospital because of convulsions, complain bitterly if injections are given as part of the treatment. They are afraid that the 'snake' will be embittered by the injection and make the child even worse. Men in compound groups have in general proved sceptical when taught in hygiene lessons that no snake can be living inside a human being. Some informants stress the belief in the nyoka ya zichira, the special 'snake' believed to cause epilepsy. According to them, this 'snake' is especially active at the time of a new moon:

"Yes, there is a snake inside the man. Here in the compound there is a child of mine, born by my elder brother. His wife was killed by this snake.

The "epilepsy snake" (nyoka ya zichira) can kill a person by throwing him down and he dies immediately. Sometimes it will make him fall into the fire, or into the water. He will have no chance to escape. The water will kill him..."

Among Tenwa Christians, some traditional taboos (ziyilayila) have lost their significance, particularly those connected with food and - to some extent - death. Sexual taboos, on the other hand, still figure largely as giving rise to the same ailments as in the past. ⁽⁵⁴⁾ In the case of ritual taboos and those associated with wun'anga ("traditional art of divination and healing"), attitudes seem to vary.

The demand for being 'ritually pure' when attending Holy Communion (i.e. not being 'hot') appears to be upheld by several pastors, but there is disbelief as to the effectiveness of this demand. Furthermore, I do not find the notion among Christians that a break against this taboo would cause sickness, but "a person who takes communion while 'hot' has a debt before God".

As far as lin'anga are concerned, their taboos regulations are upheld to the extent that Christians approach them

(54) See p. 168

in times of affliction. This matter will be dealt with further on in this chapter.

Social sins, for instance anger, jealousy, adultery, and theft, are no longer directly connected with sickness to the same extent as before.

It is true that the anger of an older person, or of a person of a higher status, is still feared within the present middle-aged generation of Christians, but this seems to be founded more on potential displeasure than on fear of sickness.

Anger is thus definitely regarded as evil, but not for the same reasons as before. Bitterness (xiviti) in a non-Christian father because of his Christian son refusing to take part in kinship functions, would be completely disregarded, for religious reasons.

Severe scolding and cursing (kurukatela) was often referred to by informants as a serious social sin, which they urgently would pray God to forgive. The implication was that such cursing could make God send punishment in the form of accident or sickness. Some evidence points to the possibility that this sin is considered most serious if committed against a fellow Christian, but this cannot be adequately confirmed at present.

Adultery is, of course, recognized as sin against the Law of the Church, and, if discovered, it will lead to severe consequences in terms of church discipline. The belief that it would lead to sickness in the family appears to have weakened, at least, if not completely disappeared, unless it is coupled with breach of some taboo, as, for instance, adultery with a woman who has recently had an abortion.

Spiritual sickness causation still vital

Even as certain traditional beliefs regarding sickness causation thus have lost some of their ancient power, and

...are more easily read. I maintain that Tahwa Christians still regard the majority of illness as arising from the mysterious realm of spiritual powers. This applies to the continuing belief in witchcraft, revenging spirits (siyihukwa) and foreign possessive spirits (mandiki) as sickness-bringing agents, and to the seemingly universal belief that evil sickness or misfortune can come over a Christian village, or a man, or a woman, or a child, as punishment for sin, or, alternatively, as a test of faith.

Christians Denying Traditional Spiritual Beliefs

Beliefs in witchcraft and siyihukwa (spirits-of-revenge) still have much part of Tahwa Christians' frame of reference. Some crude forms of witchcraft beliefs have been abandoned by many, but the principle of witchcraft seems to be taken for granted by an overwhelming majority. Sickness is often seen as a result of witchcraft, and the symptoms suggesting activity of siyihukwa in the village⁽⁵⁵⁾ are most rapidly attended by Christians and non-Christians. Several reported examples of Christians following the traditional pattern in propitiating a spirit-of-revenge indicate that this belief is still very active.

The same observation, so far as witchcraft is concerned, is well documented from all over Africa.⁽⁵⁶⁾ White writes:

"The majority, if not all, fear it, and many of them have encountered it in their mortal life. This mystical power is not fiction: whatever it is, it is a reality, and one with which African peoples have to reckon".⁽⁵⁷⁾

(55) See p. 172

(56) E. E. Williamson, Akan Religion and the Christian Faith, p. 129; M. Wilson, op. cit. p. 182; A. A. Tubb, op. cit. II, p. 135.

(57) J. White, op. cit. p. 128

It appears that, among Christian Tshwa, these two types of traditional beliefs have been least influenced by the new Faith. This may indicate that beliefs in witchcraft and in spirits-of-revenge respond to deeply felt needs among Tshwa, to explain - and thus make manageable - influences on their lives which they regard as utterly threatening.

It can also be suggested that, from a Christian point of view, this state of affairs is due to the attitude missionaries in general have taken in this respect. Witchcraft and beliefs in "evil spirits" have been dismissed as "irrational", "superstition in your imagination", or "the works of Satan", and the common advice has been "not to think of such things". The obvious result of this attitude has been one of withdrawal.

The impossibility for Tshwa to accept this missionary attitude has led to the interpretation that witchcraft and miphu were something strictly their own: They are seen as burdens which had to be born by them alone and which were completely out of reach of a white man's perception. However, in public, Tswana Christians adopt the "Christian" attitude towards these beliefs, and, consequently, witchcraft and revenging spirits are hardly even mentioned in a "Christian" context, let alone being faced constructively.

Here again, it seems that a similar attitude has been almost universally taken by missionaries, and probably most whites, all over Africa. Some Africans express their doubts about the sincerity of whites in this respect: an Monica Wilson found when a Christian Nyasaland woman told her: "You just disagree like all Europeans, you do not wish to admit belief in witchcraft, you are just pretending". (56)

A Christian African from Ghana criticized this missionary attitude at a deeper level.

"The Christian Council pamphlet on witchcraft... took the position that witchcraft was not a reality

(56) A. Wilson, op. cit. p. 182

but only a psychological delusion..... Anybody who knows African Christians intimately will know that no amount of denial on the part of the Church will expel belief in supernatural powers from the minds of the African People.

What often happens as a result of such denunciation is that a state of conflict is created in the mind of the Christian, and he becomes a hypocrite who in official church circles pretends to give the impression that he does not believe in these things, while in his own private life he resorts to practices which are the results of such beliefs". (59)

In the case of foreign, possessive and sickness-bringing spirits' (mandiki), the missionary attitude has been completely opposite to the one regarding witchcraft and spirits-of-revenge. Evidently, a definite spiritual force has here been recognized. Mandiki seem to have been equated to demons, mentioned in the Bible, and scriptural examples of exorcism of demons have probably initiated the work among Protestants of exorcising mandiki by prayer. (60)

Such exorcism is still occasionally reported, but it seems to be less common than some years back, while, on the other hand, actual 'possession' by mandiki is said to be on the increase. Some informants ascribed this alleged decline of Christian exorcism to the fact that "some persons have a special power in this respect". One Methodist pastor, formerly active at Unyamwezi, was especially mentioned by several informants in connection with "exorcism by prayer". But this kind of praying is now mostly done by Zionists, according to several informants.

The fact that such prayer-exorcism can be performed in "ordinary" Christian congregations is, however, confirmed by the following statement by a pastor-informant:

(59) L.A. Jackson, "The Christian Church and African Heritage" in Jan Deaal, Christianity in Africa as seen by Africans, pp. 130-131

(60) Cf. for instance Luke 8:12 and Acts 19:12

"When I was at Maxavele on a Christmas Day, a woman possessed by mandiki was present in the congregation. I preached about the child Jesus who had come to destroy all the customs of our grand-fathers.... That woman stood up and came forward crying. We had prayer, and I asked her, What makes you cry? She said, I cannot worship because I have mandiki.

Then I said to her, What is your desire? She said, My desire is that I leave the mandiki and follow the Gospel. I said, Do you have things dedicated to the mandiki (ziphahlela)? She answered, I have. - Will you let us take them and burn them? She said, I will.

A little later I took along an evangelist. We entered her hut, took the mandiki - things and went out along the path, to a crossroads, had prayer there and burned them. Then we broke down the house (where she had worshipped the mandiki) and burned the pieces. We took her brass-rings (masinza) and threw them far away. When we had finished, we had prayer again.

Then I said to her, When you hear the mandiki-drums again, don't go there! Your task is now to follow the Gospel, to love meetings and to go to church again and again. If you leave the church and stop worshipping, the mandiki will come back to you. - Even now she is following the Gospel. She has not yet left it".

(2) God sends sickness

God sends sickness - or allows sickness to come from Satan - as punishment for sins. This belief among the Tshwa Christians appears to be fundamental in their new attitude towards sickness. Many European Christians may have a similar understanding, but in this case it may be the Tshwa traditional belief of the ancestors punishing their descendants' sins by sickness, in a Christian dress.

A few informants insisted that "God does not send trials on Christians, to test their faith. These trials come only from Satan". But, in the main, I found no clear distinction here. One said: "God brings punishment, but He does not kill through his testing". Smallpox was mentioned several times as punishment coming from God. "This may come over you because of some serious sin, like adultery".

It is also part of the Christian concept that cripples and

albinos are sent by God because of the parents' sin. One informant gave the following example from a neighbour of his:

"A father of an albino baby, whom I know, was totally overcome by grief, as he saw his child. He cursed himself and his wife, and was even angry with God. The midwife asked him to calm himself, as his anger might be punished by God through yet another albino child.

After some time, his wife bore him another albino baby. Then the father was totally stunned. But soon he went to buy some clothes for his two albino children and began speaking of them as his own children. The next time his wife became pregnant, she bore a normal child".

Punishment for sin may even kill, as "God is the one who measures the days of every man". This is one key-phrase which makes it possible for Tshwa to reconcile that witches and spirits may be the active agents, while God is actually allowing the punishment to come. One informant formulated it this way:

"As many people are so clever, witchcraft must be real. But what I do not believe is that witches can kill a person unless God has already called him, i.e. that the days of that man were finished".

Another expression, obviously frequently used when some severe affliction has struck a Tshwa Christian, is: "God has forsaken me". (Nungungulu i nzi tsikile). This points again to the belief that God may open the door for some other agent to carry out certain punishment. This agent would most often be seen as Satan, and there is evidence that witchcraft and "evil spirits" are sometimes regarded as Satan's instruments.

Christian attitudes to cure

When Christian Tshwa get sick, they often want to be treated at some hospital. The steadily growing flow of patients to hospitals in the Tshwa area confirms this observation. Many non-Christians nowadays also follow the stream to hospital treatment.

However, traditional cures still play a significant role.

No specific research has - to my knowledge - been done in order to find out how large a percentage of hospital patients in the Tshwa area have also been treated by Tshwa traditional doctors (tin'anga). One missionary doctor, active in the region for more than 15 years, estimates that approximately 80 percent of his patients show definite marks of having been treated by a n'anga before going to hospital. (61)

As the majority of these patients are normally counted as Christians, such a statement would indicate that a large number of Christian Tshwa seek help in a hospital after the n'anga has failed to treat him satisfactorily. It has also been reported that certain tin'anga actually "refer" their patients to hospital for definite parts of their treatment, for instance: an operation, later to go back to the n'anga to complete the cure.

Similar observations are reported from other parts of Africa. Welbourn says that:

"... in Uganda it was estimated in 1962 that 90 percent of those admitted to the children's ward at Mulago hospital in Kampala first reported to the hospital at the instance of Ganda diviners, who himself dealt with the 'spiritual agents' he regarded (in many cases, I believe, quite honestly) as ultimately responsible". (62)

It should be noted, however, that in the case of the above-quoted estimation regarding the Tshwa, no distinction has been made between herbalists and actual tin'anga. As herbalists, in general, utilize only the pharmaceutical qualities of certain herbs or parts of trees, they are placed by Tshwa Christians in a different category than tin'anga.

I know of at least one instance, where an evangelist, also known as a herbalist, was called in openly to apply his

(61) Personal communication from R. Simpson, M.D.

(62) F.B. Welbourn, op. cit. p. 15

medicine on a person who had been unsuccessfully treated at hospital. According to the pastor supplying the information, the patient was considered to be dying, and "no modern medicine was of any avail. Then I asked permission to bring in this evangelist, and the day after his treatment, the patient began to get well".

Even allowing for a number of Christian Tshwa going to herbalists in times of sickness, informants' statements confirm that several approach tin'anga. A few relevant quotations:

"Oh, there are many Christians who go to tin'anga. Among those who ask tin'anga for help, there is one or another who runs to hospital for treatment".

"A Christian mother, whom I know, went to a diviner to find a n'anga who could cure her children. She had two sets of twins, and all had fallen ill on the same day".

"There are such sicknesses which doctors (modern) fail to cure. Then, go to a Tshwa doctor and he will help. This happens many times..."

When questioned on this point, several persons, among them some Church leaders, claim that "only those who are not really converted resort to traditional forms of cure. When a Christian has strong faith, he will never think of going to a n'anga". The report of a Christian village leader who withstood the strong pressure from his kin-group and his wife, who all wished to find out from a diviner "what was killing them", as two of his children had suddenly died, is an example of such 'strong faith'. It is to be noted that this last pattern is a traditional symptom of spirits-of-revenge (gipfhuksa). Undoubtedly, many more examples of this character could be found.

Nevertheless, it is well demonstrated that a large number of Tshwa Christians still use traditional cures in case of sickness. This would seem to lead to a loyalty crisis. 'Illiamson, on the other hand, quotes an opinion "that the ability to sustain a dichotomy of mind in the approach to this mixed cultural environment was the African's greatest asset

in his new situation". (63)

My investigation leads me to the opinion that Tshwa Christians in critical situations are actually plunged into a conflict of conscience, particularly when the symptoms give rise to the suspicion that witches or "evil spirits" are involved. In other words, the dividing line in connection with wun'anga ("traditional art of divination and healing") does not primarily run between Christian and non-Christian, but between those who utilize wun'anga with a good conscience, and those who are afraid of being detected.

An illuminating comment on the running battle many Christians in critical situations are fighting with their consciences and sense of loyalty, was given by two informants mentioning three new causes, by which Christians may attract sickness:

- 1) You may become sick of fear, if you hesitate about eating mifa-junge or not (in death purification, see p. 247)
- 2) You may get sick because of neglecting to do a n'anga.
- 3) You may get sick from wearing a xitshungulo (protective amulet).

In short: Sickness may now result from the very customs that Tshwa traditionally regard as protective! From a Christian viewpoint, the test of strength would then be between "strong faith" and weak. The following analysis, however, rather points to a different categorization.

Analysis of the question "Hospital or n'anga"?

It would be completely wrong to state that modern medicine treats the sickness without bothering about the cause. Still, I find that this is the point where modern medicine fails to meet the total need of the Tshwa people.

(63) H. J. Williamson, op. cit. p. 128, quoting G. Tooth, Studies in Mental Illness in the Gold Coast (1930)

One reason is the obvious difference between scientific views of sickness causation and traditional concepts of the same. To the Tshwa mind, modern medicine is so deeply concerned with the "What?" question, that for them, the more vital questions of "Why?" and "By whom was the sickness sent?" are ignored.

It would appear that modern medicine has by its very nature of being a rationalistic science removed sickness from the mystical realm, in which Tshwa traditionally look for its main cause. Simultaneously, it has given medicines and drugs a leading role in all curing, while introducing a new element of the same rationalistic and material category: surgery.

It is also possible that, although psycho-somatic causation is a well established factor in modern medicine, it plays an inferior role in diagnostics in the Tshwa area, because of limited knowledge of Tshwa psychology. As in Africa "the psychic factor in psycho-somatic medicine is becoming a matter not of individual psychopathology but of failures in interpersonal relationships", (64) it would seem that this type of diagnostics in Africa necessitates sociological and anthropological insights in addition to medical. The matter of "externalization" of guilt (See next chapter) also presents possible complications.

The rationalistic attitude towards sickness which accompanies modern medicine has also been largely adopted by the Church. "To go to hospital" is the Christian way of finding healing. I do not disregard 'prayers for the sick', which are recognized as a Christian duty, but it has already been pointed out that these are mainly regarded as supplementary to hospital treatment, and in no way present any alternative. Nor do they consciously enter the area of spiritual or social sickness causation.

(64) F.B. Welbourn, op. cit. p. 19

Thus, by allying itself with modern medicine in unrelenting opposition against traditional wun'anga, the official attitude of the Protestant Church in the Tshwa region has led to a side-stepping of the issue of religious, psychological and social sickness causation, which to the Tshwa is of primary importance.

I find two main results of this rationalisation of sickness:

(a) Certain types of sickness are regarded as outside the reach of modern medicine.

(b) It encourages Tshwa to continue approaching the tin'anga to find spiritual causes of illness.

a. In determining "what types of sickness cannot be treated at hospital", informants revealed that this categorisation does not follow the times of symptoms but rather that of assumed underlying causes. It should also be noted that the efficacy of hospitals as such is not drawn into question, but that certain causes, according to the Tshwa viewpoint, cannot be dealt with by a scientific-medical process. The following statement brings out these two important points:

"When a man is sick because of 'madness', i.e. somebody has made him sick (ka babiyisa), he cannot be treated in hospital. Several persons may have the same kind of madness, and the majority of them may be cured at hospital, but in some cases the hospital fails. He may have headache and gets medicine from the doctor, but he does not get better. Only a Tshwa doctor (n'anga) can help him, because the sickness was born on him.

But, on the other hand, if the hospital fails in treating you, when you have not been made sick by somebody else, then a n'anga has no help to give, either".

Most informants agreed that causes of witchcraft, spirits-of-revenge (mipfukwa), and foreign spirits (mandiki) should be treated by tin'anga. One pointed out the acute danger for a person afflicted by mipfukwa in going to hospital. "If he does not hurry to find a n'anga, and goes to hospital instead to get cured, the hospital can make him die. And somebody else will follow immediately.... until they begin to see

what is the matter'. This confirms the observation in Ghana by Williamson, that "in a crisis a person turns to the 'appropriate power'". (65)

One pastor-informant objected that people cannot know of such 'systemic' causes, unless they go to a diviner, and concluded that, "If only people could keep away from the diviner, these old beliefs would soon die". We are reminded, however, that certain patterns of symptoms seem to lead the suspicion in definite directions, (66) and in such cases the diviner's role is more to confirm the diagnosis than to reveal.

Of specific illnesses that are believed to be completely cured by traditional doctors, while modern medicine "can only temporarily relieve the complaint", a gonorrhea (gonorrhea) and rheumatism (rheumatism) are most frequently mentioned. In these cases, reference is made to the patients rather than to actual treatments. The difficulties in connection with hospital treatment of sickle have already been demonstrated. (67)

5. My material adequately proves that "to the African mind, disease is closely linked with religion". (68) As modern medicine removes it from the religious-magical realm, it continues to search for the spiritual cause in another context. So far, the Protestant Church seems to have ignored this aspect, except in converting 'pressure for the sick'. Confession, however, by sickness, (69) is also in Protestant context, an exception.

"We had prayer for a friend of mine, whose penis had

(65) S.G. Williamson, op. cit. p. 180

(66) See pp. 17-18

(67) See p. 19

(68) G. Ferrand, Religion in an African City, p. 131

(69) The confession in traditional context, pp. 182-183

swollen because of playing with a menstruating girl. This boy had been treated with "Tshwa branches" (medicines). But, as his father was a class leader, and he was a Christian himself, the pastor was called for prayer. But they did not tell the pastor who led the prayer anything about the nature of the sickness, or the treatment".

Another example:

"We who pray for a sick person do not know anything else but praying for him. But he himself will know what to do... by going to the bones (diviner)".

Some informants mentioned that certain persons "had been prayed for by the Zionists and become healed. And now they continue to worship with the Zionists". Even if such remarks without exception were given in a condescending tone, it is clear that Tshwa Christians recognize the different attitudes towards healing between their own Church and Zionists. (70)

In a different context, I have stated that "no true life crises rites are found within Christian Tshwa worship". (71) This would indicate that the Protestant Churches are skirting the issues involved in Tshwa traditional concepts of illness. Obviously, this is a factor that tends to strengthen, or at least to keep at bay, the role of the n'anga in the spiritual aspect of illness, while, on the other hand, the belief in his medicines has possibly decreased because of the strong reputation of "medicines from hospital".

Christianity presents itself as a great spiritual force. But, it may be suggested that modern medicine in its present image among the Tshwa, with which the Church so closely identifies its concept of healing, contributes to decrease the spiritual influence of the new Faith.

(70) Cf. B. Sundkler, op. cit. pp. 200-201

(71) "Worship, sacrifice and Sacraments", p. 159

Conclusions

Field has demonstrated that the question regarding "Hos-
pital or Divine?" cannot be answered in the fashion of
either/or, but rather as both. Hospital treatment and
traditional healing are closely seen as mutually complementary.
and if considered, using their traditional pharmaceutical
knowledge as divine recognized by Christians, may play an
important role in divine. Certain patterns of symptoms
leading to the thought of mystical causes, which must be
treated by spiritual methods, prescribed by a diviner.

Further, this is an observation which has been amply docu-
mented from other parts of Africa. Margaret Field writes
in her book:

Although the various therapists recognize their limi-
tations and frequently tell patients with pneumonia,
chest pain or pulmonary distress with blood-cough-
ing to go to hospital, they stand firmly on the theory
that the primary vulnerability of the patient to the di-
vine is of supernatural origin and until redemptive
ritual has been performed the hospital efforts are
futile" (7).

Field has previously discussed the Christian concept as
being that, sickness is punishment for sins past or allowed
to grow. It appears remarkable that little effort has been
made in the past by the Protestant Churches to meet the need
of and to try to find the supernatural causes of their sicknesses
and to work remediations based on these findings.

As several informants state that "many Christians 'slide
into' their traditional beliefs in times of sickness and
affliction", it is significant to note that the main method of
keeping such Christians 'sliding back' is by a church disci-
pline that is more apt to cut off an offender from membership
than to deal constructively the difficult conflict of conscience
in which a sick person often finds himself.

Returning finally to the oft-quoted statement by Malinowski, "Under the stress of emotional crisis the indigenous belief becomes stronger than the alien creed", (72) I find it, on the whole, confirmed by observations among the Tswana.

This will undoubtedly continue to be true, at least as long as Christianity remains alien to Tswana culture in a critically important area of human education and culture, particularly by refusing to recognize the vast dimension of affliction questions, which on the Tswana mind is the central factor.

(72) B. Malinowski, in Methods of Study of Culture Contact in Africa, p. xxix.

9. L.W. SIN AND SALVATION

"A relationship is structured by the rights and obligations of the parties to it. Social change occurs when, and only when, new norms develop as to these rights and obligations, for until new ideas gain general acceptance and become norms any infraction of the existing code will call forth sanctions and result in a reinforcement of the traditional pattern" (1)

The Tshwa society is in a situation where norms at least of two different standards are constantly utilized. Within both "camps", ethical systems are at work, but through their constant inter-penetration, a sense of moral insecurity appears to be fairly wide-spread. Most Christian Tshwa, it would seem, presently have one foot in each of these camps, withdrawing from certain traditional actions for religious reasons while accepting other parts of the ethical code by using social criteria. It is conceivable that a person is censured because of a certain action in one section of society, while the same act calls forth praise in the other context. He may also find himself in an acute conflict of conscience, as has been pointed out in "Pursuit of Health". (2)

It seems, therefore, to be of great importance to attempt an analysis of ethical norms in traditional Tshwa culture, based upon information from my informants, and on my pastoral experience, and to investigate the inter-relation between these and the Christian standards, manifestly accepted by Tshwa Christians but nevertheless foreign to the Tshwa frame of reference.

(1) M. Danton, "The Restructuring of Social Relationships", in A. Southall, (ed), Social Change in Modern Africa, p. 115

(2) See p. 202

In this analysis, as in other parts of this Dissertation, I have made a conscious effort to avoid any value judgments in any direction.

Good and evil

The concept of the 'highest good' of the Talmud has been dealt with in some detail in the chapter on "Quest for Life".⁽³⁾ We are reminded that the human ideal in the traditional culture is 'sufficient life', and that Christianity has modified this goal to reach "the better life", which included all elements in the traditional ideal, while changing certain emphases and adding a few new items. The most important addition is "the eternal life", or "unending life" (eternal life) which is seen as a guaranteed reward for every Christian who continues faithfully to worship and to keep the law of Christ.

The traditional 'sufficient life' ideal included 'right relationships' as a priority element. It was said that, in the Christian ideal of 'the better life', the emphasis is not as strong as with 'right relationships' in social terms, but rather on right relations with God. This trend should not be overly stressed, but one important aspect of it will be demonstrated further on in this respect, in speaking about 'confession'.

Good and evil 'life'

Another way of expressing the Talmudic traditional ideal would be 'the normal', or 'a life fulfilling normal expectations'. Thus, what is normally counted on within Talmudic society: health, fertility, enough food, and satisfactory social relationships, is 'good'. Fringe benefits, for instance a substantially improved income, are welcomed to some extent, but the fear of "ouch-life" is real, and checks the desire for

(3) See further pp. 106-107

more wealth and success than is 'appropriate'.

From a functional point of view, then, 'good' is whatever contributes to establishing or upholding the 'sufficient life'. "Not until one has understood that for the African 'the ontological good is the ethically good' can one appreciate and understand the moral sense of the African and the direction of ethical pursuit", says Adegbola speaking from a Yoruba experience. (4) In other words, the term 'ethically good' is not attached to certain acts or states of mind as an indelibly written label, but 'good' is what produces good results, conducive to 'life'.

It is 'conducive to life' for a man to have children. Therefore, it is 'good' (and normal) for him to take another wife if his first wife is denied offspring. As a matter of fact, this is provided for through the nzhowolo (bridewealth) institution. (5) It is 'good' for a father to be able to build a large stone house which will enhance his appropriate prestige, but it is not good if the son does this before the father, as this would disrupt the 'right relationship' determined by the rule of seniority. Sacrifice to the ancestors fall, naturally, in this 'good' category, and assisting the kin group to supply what is needed for a sacrifice, is necessarily 'good', as this helps to enhance 'life' of the group. Likewise, rituals are 'good', as they aim at improving health and 'life' of the person.

By the same token, 'evil' in the traditional sense is what decreases 'life' in its functional meaning. Broken relationships within the kin-group or community are seen as seriously evil, as they potentially lead to "no-life".

(4) E.A.A. Adegbola, "The Theological Basis of Ethical" in Dickson-Ellingsworth (ed), Ethical Revelation and African Beliefs, p. 18

(5) Nzhowolo (bride-wealth) is further explained on pp. 17-18

Because of the relationships it breaks, and potential sickness in the family, adultery is seen as evil, but extra-marital relations as such are not evil, unless they produce a curse (khombo) because of some broken taboo. 161

We find, therefore, that an act will be regarded as 'evil' because of its evil results. Anger and its expressions are seen as dangerously evil, as they may call forth bitterness and sickness. Neglect of marital duties is usually not seen as 'evil' until some sickness or accident reminds the kin group of its forgotten duties.

Good is normal

'Good' is equated with the standard, the normal, the expected behaviour, so it is believed that man normally is 'good'. Goodness, then, is nothing added to the character, like frosting on a cake. Williamson says, with experience from Ghana, "Man as he is, is man as the Creator intended him to be". (7) A man who lives and works for himself and his family and keeps his social relationships inside and outside his kin group intact, is, by definition, 'good'. Evil is then conceived as a breach against the normal, somebody temporarily going "wrong" in committing an evil act. 'Good' might be compared to the state of health, while the evil act is the sickness, temporarily disturbing the equilibrium.

Thus, there is no 'evil' man according to Tswana philosophy, except in one special instance: The witch is intrinsically evil, living and steadily working for the destruction of persons and society as a whole. As White expresses it: "These are practices without merit, evil magic and sorcery are

(6) several taboos are listed and explained on pp. 167-169

(7) S.G. Williamson, Akan religion and the Christian faith, p. 113

the very incarnation of moral evil". (15) This understanding was re-inforced by most of our informants through their strong belief that 'a witch cannot be converted'. As 'good' is normal, and she is opposite to everything normal, she is thus, by definition, evil!

At this point, besides the obvious evilness of alleged results of witchcraft activities, I find valuable guidance in the definition of 'good' from the Ndembu in Zambia:

"What is good, for Ndemba, is the open, the public, the uncalculated, the sincere. A man is said to be 'good' when he performs his duties from the 'liver', not from calculated policy with a mask of outward politeness under which malice is concealed..."

The breeding, hidden anger of the witch is the essence of evil, as this is a continuous source of disturbance and destruction of life-enhancing forces.

Evil influences from the outside

(*'Externalisation'*)

A normal man is considered intrinsically 'good', his temporary evil acts must come from himself. The Zande man, seeing the obvious results of his evil actions (in sickness or misfortune), intuitively looks behind him to discover what evil force has been the active agent on his mind, leading him to commit a sin or break a taboo. We have already seen how these evil influences are conceptualized in certain spirits or witches. According to informants, witchcraft is what is usually suggested, "having a man to be the servant of the witch, in performing terrible acts".

This is an example of so-called "externalisation" of guilt, which means that forces from outside lead a person

(15) A. R. R. R., African Religions and Philosophy, p. 213

(16) J. Turner, Drums of Affiliation, p. 49

into evil acts, presumably against his own will. "The man is the object acted upon". (10) Another example is the 'possessed person', who is automatically exonerated from all that he does while 'possessed', as the spirits (*mandiki*) are the active agents. A similar "externalization" appears to be experienced by Tahwa in their dreams, as visiting or speaking persons or spirits are considered as coming from the outside. Hence, the urgent importance of messages received through dreams.

According to the Tahwa traditional point of view, then, evil action is the result of an evil desire emerging from a 'will' that is considered personal, but outside of the individual's mind. Consequently, even if a criminal guilt adheres to the person who acted, he sees it as himself to find out "who sent the evil will upon him".

Some symbols for 'good' and 'evil'

The most common symbol for evil is 'heat' (*hama*). This is the opposite of the 'cool' rain with its life-giving power. 'Heat' is considered to be an evil as it causes the burning of whatever grows in the fields, leaving people and animals to die. Symbolically, 'heat' is generated by sexual acts or certain states having to do with the reproductive organs. Thus, menstruating women are 'hot', and for a period after childbirth, (11) and abortion, the same state applies. For men, 'heat' is experienced at circumcision, and in times of war a man-slayer is 'hot' until he has been properly purified.

'Heat' is also experienced as the result of improper sexual acts. All known regulations are therefore meticulously

(10) G. Ljensvat, Divinity and Experience, pp. 149-150.

(11) Until the time of "Kativisa mwamama" (strengthening the child) a ceremony which establishes the husband's fatherhood of the child.

followed while burying a dead, so that the 'cool' ruin is not prevented from falling. But certain cases need special care. After an abortion, the foetus must be buried in damp soil in order not to make the country 'hot'. The same applies, e.g., to a man who has died from malala. (12)

The least common kind of 'heat', however, is created by the act of sexual intercourse, whether this is within the marriage or outside. The day after the sexual act, the two partners are 'hot'. But, without performing any special purification, they 'heat' themselves again one night and proceed without intercourse.

It is obvious that the 'heat' in itself cannot be seen as 'evil' in ritual terms, as states thus defined appear to be outside of the sphere normally considered moral. But, similarly to actions which are feared to be 'evil' because of their wicked results, 'heat' is bad because it has a power of potential destruction. 'Hot' persons are prohibited from visiting sick, or a "new" house, and barred from taking part in a sacrifice, because their 'heat' may disturb the forces of 'life' which in such occasions are particularly delicate. Similar conceptions of 'heat' are reported from several peoples in Africa. (13)

Some informants held the term 'heat' also in the case of death, but it is more likely that 'blackness' falls upon the kin group through loss of death. Such 'blackness' must be removed by special invocations and purification. (14) Black seems to have a distinct significance also among the Nuer, as the proverb, "Black objects often stand for witchcraft and the death and sickness it produces." (15)

(12) A fatal disease, reportedly caused by the breach of a serious sexual taboo. See p. 102

(13) See, e.g., Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute, 1901, J. Taylor, The Tribal Religion, p. 185

(14) See "Death and Life Eternal", p. 247

(15) V. Turner, op. cit. p. 128

Another observation in this respect is that the skirt of Tshwa Methodist women's 'uniform' is "black to remind of the sins we have been saved from".

To be 'holy', 'pure' and 'right', on the other hand, is to be 'white' (kubana). 'Whiteness' is the blameless state, the 'cool' state which cannot produce any evil results. One may say that this is the symbolic equivalent of the most important blessing: rain.

'White' is used to translate the Christian term "holy", e.g. in Koya waka Bani (The Holy Spirit, lit. The White Spirit). Here again, it is noted that the goodness denoted in this case is on "par level". It is the normal state. Actions of good will cannot add to the 'whiteness', only confirm it. Thus, it is rather the absence of evil than a positive goodness.

"Nzhati" (shadow) is in the Tshwa culture a good element. "A person who has nzhati is like a big tree, in whose shadow I can rest and find strength". This is completely opposed to the understanding of 'shadow' among most other peoples, notably the Lovedu, where nzhati (shadow) "is, on the whole, dangerous, not to its primary intermediary host, but to others". (16)

Christian ethics introduces conflict

Compared to the Tshwa functional moral (which Mbiti would call 'dynamic ethics') (17) which denotes an act as 'good' or 'evil' according to the result it produces, Christian ethics appear 'static' or 'structural'. By Christian standards, an act is considered intrinsically 'good' or 'evil', regardless of circumstances or results. The Church says, e.g., "Monogamy

(16) Krige, op. cit. p. 213

(17) I would not agree with this, as the word dynamic usually implies something wonderfully creative.
J. Mbiti, op. cit. p. 214

is good'. Thus, taking a second wife is 'evil', even if such an act might result in off-spring. Extra-marital sexual relations are intrinsically evil, whether taboos are broken or not. They are against "the Christian law".

Another example is that modern medicine is 'good', while amulets are shunned as 'evil'. In this situation, many a Christian mother, I am told, is caught in a dilemma between using modern medicine "which might upset the 'snake' in the child" and tying the string with amulets around the child's abdomen - with the risk of being "discovered" by somebody in the Church. The reasoning here seems to be that "the amulet which we see according to Pshwa custom as a life-enhancing item, certainly cannot hurt the child". Thus, the 'evil' is not in the amulet, but in the discovery and the shame that might result from it. One informant, then a lay-leader, told how he had had an amulet himself "to protect him against dangers in the mine". When he got sick, he suspected that "God might be angry with him because of the amulet" and decided to burn it. Another 'evil' was derived from the 'evil' results.

The conflict of conscience and loyalty is obviously real for a Christian man who is asked by his kinsmen to contribute a goat to a sacrifice "because of trouble in the kingroup". By keeping within the Church Law, which summarily prohibits all connections with the ancestral spirits, he will refuse to have anything to do with the sacrifice, simultaneously lowering the 'life' of his kin, both by his refusal to take part in the life-enhancing ritual, and by seriously breaking the 'right relationship'.

The whole circumstance that men to himself is 'good' stands, of course, in irreconcilable opposition to the Christian doctrine of man's intrinsic evilness. Christianity's message is that all men "like sheep have gone astray", (18)

(18) Isaiah 53:6.

but that "Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners".⁽¹⁹⁾

I have found nothing among my informants indicating that this conception of "original sin" is understood, except for some formulations from the catechism. Evil and sin are well known entities among Tshwa, but only like dirt soiling the 'whiteness' of their normal state. That "man is born sinful" is a completely foreign thought to Tshwa culture. In the same vein, Williamson writes about the Akan of Ghana: "Christianity in its doctrine of human sinfulness moves in a universe of thought and experience remote from the Akan's".⁽²⁰⁾

'Goodness', then, according to Christian standards is something possible to achieve only by way of 'salvation from sin'. Even then, 'goodness' remains a goal rather than a reality.⁽²¹⁾ There is evidence that Tshwa Christians consider this 'goodness' as something reachable only in connection with the 'eternal life', and that all one can hope for right now is to keep away from such sinful acts that would spoil the record.

Externalization in Christian context

Although serious conflict between traditional and Christian ethics appears inevitable, the concept of externalization of guilt has been completely adopted within the Christian sphere. In traditional culture, Tshwa externalize the incentive to evil action, mainly by referring it to witchcraft, or some evil spirit. In Christianity, the concept of Satan has lent itself to a similar interpretation, leaving the guilt at least partly externalized.

Several informants affirmed that "man is not evil. It is

(19) 1 Tim. 1:1

(20) J. V. Williamson, op. cit. p. 191

(21) Cf. Matthew 5:48

the spirit of Satan that comes over him, whispering in his ear that he should do certain things". Thus, whether or not a Christian commits some evil acts depends on "how strong" he is. We are here led back to the necessity of the Christian's struggle with Satan but to achieve a "strong" Christian is the goal. Thus, the guilt of the Christian is not in terms of "weak faith", while the action itself harks back to Satan.

In the hands of Isha Christians, the superstructure upon the essence of traditional Isha beliefs and spirits-of-revenge, which involved that "Isha" was witche and wiphukwa, is now being replaced by the "Isha" as "servants of God". It is significant that the "Isha" are now being referred to as "servants of God".

In contrast to the concept of witchcraft, particularly in the hands of evil, seems to have escaped those who are now being referred to as "Isha" that "witchcraft" is a "sin". By denying the possibility of witchcraft, they (Isha) are now being referred to as their enemy Number One.

Law and Legislation

The Nature of Law

In the Isha community, where "the ontological good is the physical good", the law has a functional character as well as a moral one. The law is to help produce and keep "life", as the Isha community is. The only "authority" discernable here is the law of the necessity of life within the kin-group, and/or neighbourhood, so that "life may be enhanced". It can

the spirit of Satan that comes over him, whispering in his ear that he should do certain things". Thus, whether or not a Christian commits some evil acts depends on "how strong faith he has". We are here led back to the necessity of the Christian not only to believe in God but to achieve a "strong faith in God's power".⁽²²⁾ Thus, the guilt of the Christian is, in general, thought of in terms of "weak faith", while the primary guilt for the action itself harks back to Satan and his spirit.

It seems clear that, in the minds of Tshwa Christians, Satan has become a superstructure upon the essence of traditional Tshwa evil, namely witchcraft and sorcery--(revenge). Informants mentioned that "Satan uses witchcraft and sorcery, and eyes maliki belong to him". It is significant that ancestral spirits (maliki) were never mentioned as "servants of Satan".

It is remarkable that the concept of witchcraft, particularly, as the essence of evil, seems to have escaped those missionaries who use the 'sociological' term that "witchcraft is irrational". By denying the reality of witchcraft, they inevitably deny the power which Tshwa recognize as their Number One.

Law and Custom

The nature of law

In the Tshwa community, where "the ontological good is the ethically good", the law has the most functional character of basic ethics. Its aim is to help preserve and keep 'life', as the Tshwa understand it. The only 'disciplinary' character of this law is the necessity of unity within the kin-group, and/or responsibility, so that "life may be preserved". It can

(22) Cf. to 128

be said, with Junod, that "the law (nayo) is the interest of the clan". (23) Although unwritten, these laws "have become accepted from their very nature, from the fact that they satisfy the more fundamental and common needs of life in society, as binding and obligatory". (24)

As we are mainly dealing with the ethical aspect of the law, I do not intend to discuss it in juridical terms, except to draw our attention to the fact that laws imposed from outside of Tshwa culture tend to be regarded as less binding than their own. This has been observed among mine-workers, as for example in connection with migration, work contracts, etc., are concerned. The obvious explanation lies in the fact that the Tshwa do not regard these laws as essential to 'life'.

It may be relevant to point out a fundamental difference between Tshwa and European law: While European law deals exclusively in terms of 'right' and 'wrong', Tshwa law deals in the terms of 'good' and 'evil'. Thus, ethical law and juridical law being the same thing in essence. By the same token, a juridical law (from outside) which does not clearly demonstrate itself as promoting 'life' is not felt as obligatory in the same manner.

Two different aspects of 'law' work in the minds of Tshwa, without there making any clear distinction between the two: Taboos (zivalayana), and the proper law (nyayo plur. milayo). On analysis, it appears that the Law (nayo) deals with all kinds of relationships between persons within the group, i.e. it presents itself as social law. It could also be said that the law is identified with the concept of 'right relationships', representative in all Tshwa 'quest for life'.

(23) H.A. Junod, Life of a South African tribe, II

(24) L. M. D. Life and Justice in The Bantu-speaking Tribes of South Africa, p. 197.

Taboo, on the other hand, deal with such relationships only in specific circumstances, while in several other cases they have clearly no ethical contents at all! This agrees with Adegbola's observation that "the tabu (ewo), prohibits indiscriminately, both morally and a-morally". (25)

The Law, then, regulates life according to structure and purpose of the group, while taboos are like road-signs of warning against a potential hazard, declaring an ordinarily lawful act dangerous at certain times, or for certain persons.

The Law of Christ

To the question "What is it to be a Christian?", the most common answer from Yawo Christians is: "To follow the law of Christ". While this law may be called "Law of God", or "The Christian Law", or even "The law of the Church", it is clearly demonstrated that the Christian life is seen in terms of "following a law". As this law is believed to lead to the ultimate goal of "eternal life", it may be surmised that it is considered in the same obligatory category as their own traditional law.

The main contents of this law, obviously, is the Ten Commandments, which are supposed to be known by heart by every baptised candidate. Some informants gave "the new Christian law" as their answer. But very commonly, the gist of the Christian law was "To leave all old ways of life; to go to church; to worship God; to pay the Church dues". The factor of "love" also came up in some replies, mainly in the negative injunction that "A Christian should never be angry".

From an ethical viewpoint, this puts a strong emphasis on the negative aspect of "leaving the old". Thus, the ethical contents of the Christian law is often seen as a total negation of the traditional life, rather than, for instance "The Sermon on the Mount".

(25) E.A.A. Adegbola, op. cit. p. 157

(26) Matthew 2:37-39

Legalistic outlook analyzed

A legalistic trend has been found in Christian Churches in several different parts of Africa. Thus, Anderson noted this fact in the Congo, while Durr and Pauw make the same observation among the Khasa and Tswana. (27)

It must be noted that such a legalistic attitude is by no means limited to Christians in Africa. It appears everywhere, from a Christian viewpoint often seen as a sign of "shallow understanding of the Christian faith". Nevertheless, legalism in African Christianity seems to be so universal that some specific cause may be suggested.

Tswana Christians are no exception to this rule. Legalistic teaching and preaching appears to represent the normal theme. In certain instances, I have personally experienced that preaching on "the unmerited grace of God" may be even resented by certain leaders.

It has been suggested that

"For the first generation of converts a legalistic attitude about worship on the part of the missionaries is natural. It helps them to define the separate identity of their converts. In the next generation, such an attitude, if unbalanced, will be that of Africans themselves in order to maintain their separate role in their social environment". (28)

I agree unreservedly to the necessity of a clearly defined "separate identity" of the first Christian generation in Africa. Furthermore, as to seeing the causes of legalism, the Methodist doctrine of "sanctification" (29) may be regarded as one factor contributing to a legalistic outlook, even if I think that this is not the intention of the doctrine.

(27) H. Anderson, Churches at the grassroots, pp. 154-155; A.A. Durr, op. cit. 1, p. 41; Pauw, Religion in a Tswana-Chiefdom, p. 115.

(28) Fortes-Dietrich (ed.), African systems of thought, p. 51.

(29) See p. 71.

as such. Influence, perhaps unconsciously, had also seeped in from the Roman Catholic doctrine of "merit", implying that certain religious acts may make a person more acceptable in the sight of God.

My material, however, leads me to the conclusion that the cause of a legalistic outlook is to be sought at even deeper levels. I suggest that the foundation of legalism in Churches in Africa, apart from certain aspects of Church teaching, lies in a different concept of man, sin and salvation, as this is contrasted with the Christian doctrine of "justification by faith alone".

A. It should first be noted that religion among Tswana was mainly expressed through symbolic action, while the doctrinal foundation of traditional religion was simply taken for granted. Thus, it becomes clear that Christianity as the new 'Faith' (*Xikhoeliso*) had been partly grasped as a set of activities, but also as a religion to be expressed in specific actions, considered as "the Christian Law".

In the transfer to the new 'Faith' was accompanied by strong psychological and social tension, it was necessary to re-examine the new belonging in definitely stated terms. In these 'laws' were conceived as 'conditions to life', i.e. 'eternal life'. They were interpreted as obligatory guidelines to the new necessary 'right relationship' with God. However, activities were learned but definitely regarded as of secondary importance.

B. The most important reason, from my viewpoint, is that the Tswana Church, evidently, the "African" concept of man, sin and salvation does not leave much room for the Pauline doctrine of "justification by faith alone". (30) While this doctrine presupposes the "infirmity of man in need of redemption", Tswana and normal man as 'good', and salvation as

(30) Cf. Romans 4:17

freedom from such evil powers as may endanger or prevent the continuous quest for life. Thus, it would appear that the Tswana have no frame in which to fit the mentioned Christian doctrine. Consequently, a legislative outlook is not only explainable. It seems to be the only logical "handle", by which the Tswana may get an initial grasp on the Christian faith.

Similar findings are indicated from the Congo in the statement "What the Congolese mean in the new religion is not a material God, but rather a powerful God, who has the power to make the sick healthy and rich".⁽³¹⁾ From Goats comes the note:

"Christianity speaks of man's need, salvation from sin, and of God's redemptive work. This evokes no significant response in the Aka, and among Aka Christians in the Church there is slight appreciation of these truths.

This statement is based not only on observed facts in the Church, but also on many years' experience of theological thinking. The two most difficult doctrines to understand, and for the students to grasp, are those of Sin and Grace."⁽³²⁾

As this doctrine has been seen as crucial in Protestantism,⁽³³⁾ this observation would warrant further research from a theological and practical angle.

Sin, punishment and redemption

Sin (*kgomo*) is never in any of action rather than sin of being. "Man is not by nature either 'good' or 'bad' ('live') ('live') 'bad' or 'good' rather than by the act of sin."

(31) E. Ingham, *op. cit.*, p. 140

(32) S.D. Williamson, *op. cit.*, p. 141

(33) Both the Martin Luther and John Wesley, this doctrine, grouped around, was the turning-point in their lives and became the foundation for their "Protestant" movement.

except in terms of what he does or does not do". (34) I have found that this conception has been completely carried over by Tanwa into their Christian interpretation of sin.

Informants were asked "When did you sin last?". Such a personal question could obviously not be put until a good, trustful relationship had been built up between the interviewer and the informant. But most replied without seeming embarrassment. With only one exception, the answers referred back to some incident, recent or long ago, which had, at least temporarily, left a sense of guilt.

Most common were magwala, with burning involved (kurukafala). One mentioned sickness because of having an amulet, supposedly to protect him from such accidents. Another had to refer back to the occasion a few years back when he had "finally given up his longing for modern dance (ukwina bumba)". I know I have not sinned since that time, because I have not been sick or had any accident".

It is not my intention to stress these various kinds of actions, considered sinful by the informants, and I did not probe deeper to find out whether or not this "really" was their intent etc. Such questions were, in the context, irrelevant. The primary fact, that "sins are actions" emerged unhesitatingly. Only one informant, with some background from the Wuzaraga Church, spoke of the possibility that "one may have sinned many times without even knowing it" - a concept that seems to approach the doctrine of "human sinfulness".

Sin against whom?

Social sin, already referred to, and defined as "breach of relationships", is directed both against the wronged individual and the community as such. No human relationship can be broken without potentially endangering the unity of the group. As the ancestral spirits (tingulawe) are the cause

(34) J. Helli, op. cit. p. 16

todians of kinship unity, social sins are regarded as ultimately directed towards them. Consequently, punishment for such sinful acts can be sent by the tinguluve.

At this point, it is important to stress that, although the tinguluve are approached by sacrifices and prayers, thus being considered in a somewhat divine category, they are above all regarded as elders still vitally belonging to the kin-group. Mbiti's term "living-dead" for the recently departed ancestors ⁽³⁵⁾ and Gelfand's use of the term "spiritual elders" ⁽³⁶⁾ fit well into this argument. The term "social sin", involving breaches of relationships with tinguluve as well as with living persons, will then be seen appropriate.

In the case of taboos (zivilayila), the direction of a breach is not so clearly defined. Informants referred to them only as "old rules", and there was no seeming understanding of from where the punishment of a broken taboo would be forthcoming. No doubt, there is a feeling that a broken taboo releases an immediate and automatic consequence like touching a live wire, and the active power is not recognized. Radcliffe-Brown gives the following comment:

"My own observation of the Polynesians suggests to me that in general the native conceives of the change in his ritual status as taking place as the immediate result of such an act as touching a corpse, and that it is only when he proceeds to rationalize the whole system of taboos that he thinks of the gods and spirits as being concerned". ⁽³⁷⁾

On analysis, however, I maintain that breaches of taboo are directed against "the kin-group as a whole, in its capacity as custodian of common values". ⁽³⁸⁾

(35) J. Mbiti, op. cit. p. 11

(36) M. Gelfand, Shona Religion, p. 21

(37) A. D. Radcliffe-Brown, Structure and Function in Primitive Society, p. 117

(38) See "Paradise of Death", p. 167

particularly as it is seen that 'curses' (makombo) arising from the breach of some taboo are potentially disruptive and destructive elements in the life of the group, this explanation would seem strongly supported.

Ritual sin may be regarded in the same category as taboos, as they are not tied to ethical concepts in the same way as social sins. Ritual sins would also be named "ritual impurity", dealing almost exclusively with persons approaching the sacred acts of sacrifice in the state of 'heat' (kubisa). Likewise, individuals contaminated by 'death contagion', thus being 'black', are prohibited from taking part in any sacrificial act, except those leading to the purification from death contagion.

The serious danger of ritual sin is clearly demonstrated by the belief that the entire sacrifice is rendered ineffectual by the partaking of a 'hot' person, and that the blessing expected as fruit of the sacrifice may turn into a curse.

On analysis, it thus appears that all sins, or potentially evil acts, committed by traditional Tswana, ultimately are bound to have a social aspect, either affecting an individual or the group as a whole. Thus are all attacks against the unity of society.

It is particularly significant that very few sins are regarded as directed against the sky (Tlo). Only cases of wrong doing might be discovered as "the reason why Tlo withholds the blessing of rain". But this goes into focus only in cases of extreme drought, when the hele or lele vula rite was called for, all other petitions having been exhausted. (34)

Summary of this rite (Indakanya). Indicate that no broken relationships are involved between man and file, as there was neither any sacrificial gift, nor any attempts at propitiation or restoration, but rather cursing of the hele, who was then "in anger" (said to give) to the performers, using his in-

(34) See "Archival Descriptions and Documents", pp. 126-127

strument, the rain".

In stark contrast to Tshwa traditional views, Christianity sees sin primarily as 'sin against God', whether this refers to so-called 'original sin' or sinful acts wilfully committed. Social effects of sins are, of course, recognized. The larger part of the Ten Commandments themselves deal with social relationships. Nevertheless, social effects of sin are considered as secondary to the broken relationship with God.

Among Tshwa Christians, some confusion of concepts is discernible, as they, in general, unconsciously apply inherited social criteria to sins, while the Christian super-structure inspires religious criteria to be used in their thinking about guilt and redemption. Further to confuse the issue, there is evidence that social sin would primarily be expressed in terms of wrong-doing against other Christians, or against the standards of the Church group. Outside of the Church, the religious issue again asserts up as a decisive factor, determining for the Christian whether a relationship ought to be broken or kept intact. It would seem that the conscience conflict which a Tshwa Christian faces in traditional issues would be well-nigh unresolvable when he is challenged to violate the commandment to "Honour your father and your mother" for religious reasons. Nevertheless, I am made to understand that in certain instances breaches against kinship relations may be highly commended as strengthening the 'right relationship' with God and His Church.

It would hardly be true to facts to say that Christianity among the Tshwa has totally replaced 'social sin' with its emphasis on sin as religious. But it emerges clearly that the religious criterion is overshadowing the social one, taking precedence in all cases of doubt.

To sum up, I find a tendency attempting to push all sin into the religious sphere, making it more an affair between man and God than between man and man. Ethical rules are "the law of Christ", and thus religious first, and social second at best.

Obviously, all reversals to old traditions are also sins in a religious sense, never determined by social criteria.

Old sins and new

From a Christian point of view, graduation of sin is always a risky undertaking, as it lays stress on the act rather than on the inner spirit of man. It would seem that the 'Rhangu Church' in East Rhodes may have assumed a more deeply Christian attitude towards sin than is usually found among the Tswana.

"In the assembly it is believed that all sins ranging from a white lie to murder are of the same magnitude and that the mode of repentance is the same in every case".⁽⁴⁰⁾

On the question whether there are certain sins more evil than others, the acts of killing, adultery, and theft were mentioned by most informants. Killing was generally regarded as worst of these all, for this takes away the soul of the man, while theft and adultery have a less serious effect on the estate and lineage. Of sins less mentioned in connection with this question, 'dragging of cripple' came first, followed by bewitchment, witchcraft, sorcery, and magic.

It is important to observe that all sins mentioned in this list (with the exception of witchcraft) are considered as very evil sins in the traditional context. They are all clearly within the category of 'social sins', although Christians may regard them first of all as sins against God.

The evidence that witchcraft may even be mentioned by some in terms of sin, points to a potential conflict between Christianity and the institution of traditional chief-hood.⁽⁴¹⁾

⁽⁴⁰⁾ A.A. Inst. op. cit. II, p. 155

⁽⁴¹⁾ ibid. p. 154

... of explicitly stating that no action definite-
... arising from traditional custom and beliefs was mentioned
... this list of "Seven Laws". In this no indication that
... Christians must all at once consider such wide-steps
... and should not feel that any made of this absence,
... but it is possible that we were given an intimation that such
... was to be done in completely religious terms have not yet
... among members in the state of Tabwa Christians.

... statements are available regarding the type of sin
... which is most often the cause of Church disciplinary action.
... however, I am left with the impression that
... which is an overwhelming majority. The declin-
... of kinship law may be a contributing cause of
... of this state of affairs. I am convinced, however, that conti-
... which is traditional society provides the incentive
... in social matters for many who find little in-
... considered in their efforts to remain strictly
... . The other interpretation of the term adultery
... within the law is that plays an important role,
... which is available, tradi-
... .

Another sin frequently mentioned by informants, is "ac-
... in the form of malungu. Most commonly,
... is linked in a village, where never invite anybody
... and take part. Informants records with "modern
... are much, about a few of 1 should per record. The
... is seen in the fact
... that are not done together. This new silungu custom⁽⁴²⁾
... is linked with malungu and
... is seen in the fact that the breaking
... . The informants affirmed that the breaking

⁽⁴²⁾ Silungu, of same derivation as malungu - white
... for everything belonging
... .

with traditional customs was very easy compared to their difficulty in leaving bhungi, in order to become Christians.

Sins have consequences.

Crimes of the type listed among "worst sins" were severely punished in ancient times. A thief might be killed for his crime, but more usual was the cutting off of "the hand that had stolen". Alternatively, the eyes were plucked, so that he may no longer see other people's belongings. Cases of adultery were punished by cutting off the ears, at least of the man. If the cuckolded husband was of high status, only death could expiate the crime. (43)

Such overt and direct punishment was preceded by investigation by the chief and his counsellors. But sins, as we have seen, also have more immediate consequences, which imply that no human detection is necessary for evil to reap its harvest. Sickness and accidents are the rewards striking the guilty. "You cannot be sick or have an accident if you have done nothing evil", said one informant, expressing the opinion of all. Indirectly, this universal concept has served as an effective deterrent through the ages, making people hesitate, at least, to enter into forbidden areas of action.

The concept of causal relation between sin and sickness/accidents has survived today into their interpretation of Christianity: Sins and rewards (or sickness) as punishment for sins. (45)

(43) A. Wierzbicki, On Toulous, p. 54; J.A. Persson, Der Mensch und die Welt, p. 73

(44) See "Pursuit of Health", pp. 170-171

(45) This concept is developed in pp. 198-199

There is, however, a great difference between the Christian God of Love as source of such punishment, and the inescapable consequence from a broken taboo or sin against kinship relations. It is believed that God forgives when man confesses his sin to Him in prayer, even if some informants told of several days of prayer before they "felt that (they) had been forgiven". In general, such forgiveness does not presuppose any special gift or action, similar to sacrifice in the traditional context. Neither is any other person involved. It can be an affair "between God and myself".

Alleged has observed among Zulu Christians "a higher disintegration of morals which follows upon the atomization of the individual and the displacement of societal sanctions."⁽⁴⁶⁾ In East Africa, a similar total disintegration is referred back to the declining importance of the ancestor cult:

"[The] ancestors denied that ancestral spirits had any relations with the living. This was to cast doubt on the spiritual solidarity of clan society and to take the first step towards disorganizing it. The sense of moral obligation was consequently loosened."⁽⁴⁷⁾

The process of individualization may lead into ethical anarchy in any community, badly as in societies where the unity of the group has been eroded in every avenue of life. When this process, as among the Zulu, is intensified by a tremendous 'generation gap', particularly in the growing number of youth, where the younger generation has had school education, where young Christians find themselves on the border between the morally controlled regime and the beckoning sphere of stated repression, rightly or wrongly identified with 'witchcraft',⁽⁴⁸⁾ as fear of inescapable supernatural consequences has largely been removed through the understand-

(46) A. Ntseke, *Zulu Transfiguration*, p. 161

(47) F.H. Wilson, *East African Christian*, p. 109

(48) *Ibid.* 1967

ing that "God forgives", it would seem that the ethical bars of one system have been lowered before the motivation of another has been firmly established.

Sources outside of the Tswana context, have also found that better moral attitudes may arise from the Christian teaching about God. It has been said about the Church in Uganda:

"The belief in the potency of the Christian God has relaxed many ancient fears without substituting a strong sense of the claims of God's righteousness. Very few Christians ask the question, 'How can I please God?'. There is a theoretical belief in heaven and hell, but their fears are more for this world than the next. Even habitual drunkards say, 'Jesus has made us free: we have nothing to fear'." (49)

I do not intend to give the impression that Tswana Christians excel in moral issues. On the whole, they seem anxious to follow "the law of Christ", but I cannot escape the notion that, particularly in the younger generation, there is at least potentially a more permissive moral attitude than was advisable in the traditional context. The most immediate danger in a sinful act seems to be the detection, leading to church disciplinary action, or - in applicable cases - to criminal investigation. Such fear of detection is, of course, nothing specially "Tswana", but it may hark back to the traditional view that "evil" is not evil if its consequences are evil". (50) It may also be an indication that sinners are mainly considered as persons who are "between God and myself".

I do not yet know how non-Christian Tswana judge the ethical state of Christians. What Field found in Ghana is a rather harsh judgment on Christians and the Church in that country:

(49) J. Taylor, Processes of growth in an African Church, p. 20

(50) Cf. p. 218

"The main aspersion cast today upon Christians by obosom-worshippers (obosom gods) is that the former trade upon the fact that they are not threatened in this life by any retribution for sin. The obosom makes stern ethical demands: Christian Church membership demands only that delinquency be not found out!... People join Christians because they know that when they are Christians and do wrong God will not kill them". (31)

Reconciliation urgently needed

When a diviner has found the cause of a misfortune, he also tells what is needed to restore the relationship which has somehow been broken. This act of restoration may involve sacrifice, or - in the case of andini - expenses to purchase various paraphernalia. It may even include giving up one of the kin persons, kin persons, kin persons.

The urgency in restoration of such relationships, whether they are spiritual or genuinely social, arises from the acute danger which a spirit-of-revenge poses. When two children have died "because of a spirit-of-revenge", reconciliation is of utmost urgency, lest yet another person should die.

Another factor explaining this urgency is that "tribal society is... a closed society. In public opinion drives an individual or to seek restoration into society without inter-mission and without mercy". (32) It would be unbearable within such a face-to-face community to have 'irreconciled' elements in its midst. Having daily dealing with someone, with whom ordinary relationships are forbidden because of his sin or crime, is, obviously, an unbearable situation.

The Tshwa Christian attitude towards individuals who have been disciplined for certain offences against the law of the Church is extremely different from that of missionaries. Speaking about another pastor who had been separated

(31) M. Field, Search for Security, p. 50, p. 52

(32) H. Eberhart, "Sacrifice", in Dickson-Ellingworth, Ritual Association and African Beliefs, p. 70

from his work because of adultery, one experienced Tshwa minister said: "We must remember that this sin is not the end of the man. He must live, and live within the Church!" In other similar cases, missionaries have sometimes expressed surprise at a pastor having been restored into full service only two or three years after his conviction for adultery. I suggest that this urgency, on the part of the Tshwa, is another manifestation of living in a "closed society", where reconciliation is a prerequisite of normal life.

One indispensable condition for such reconciliation, however, is a full confession on the part of the offender. Being proved guilty without confessing the sin is seen as a criterion of a "hardened heart", and no true reconciliation is possible. Separation then becomes the only possible avenue to follow, as in witchcraft cases of old.

In the traditional Tshwa society, confession was used both as an actual "treatment" in cases of misfortune, and as a prophylactic measure, taken to obviate a potential curse caused by a certain sin. (53) In Christian context, confession occurs in both circumstances, but evidence points to a more common use in a prophylactic sense.

The crucial difference between Tshwa Protestant confession and confession in traditional meaning is that, at least in prophylactic terms, a Protestant hardly ever confesses to a fellow man. When a sin has been committed, a Tshwa Christian usually hurries to make his confession in prayer to God. If this can be done in church, as a 'dedication', (54) or at a Holy Communion service, it is regarded as more efficient than a confession done privately. In fact, several informants indicated that confession should always be made at Holy Communion, even if one had already "felt that (they) had been for-

(53) The process of confession at sickness is described in detail in "Treatise of Health", pp. 182-185

(54) See p. 135

given". We should note, however, that neither at 'dedication' nor at Holy Communion is it a case of confessing to another human being!

The power of the voice (gumu) is conceived of in very concrete terms by the Ishwa. Thus, the voice of the n'anga infuses power and purpose into his medicines. When approached by ghosts, the greatest danger is to answer their questions, as ghosts get power over a person by catching hold of his voice. In confession, the voice is the instrument by which the evil inside the person is concretely poured out of him. The natural corollary is that forgiveness automatically follows a full confession. There is no more evil left inside!

Witchcraft, and possibly incest, are nevertheless transgressions of such magnitude that some informants doubted that confession would help. When revealed by confession at smallpox treatment, they may be forgotten and forgiven, but witchcraft confessions in connection with trials would traditionally lead to death. It is possible, though, that it was the verdict of the n'anga or the "mhonzo", ⁽⁵⁵⁾ rather than the actual confession, that led to severe punishment. Mair has found that some African peoples "believe that confession automatically entails absolution" also in witchcraft cases. ⁽⁵⁶⁾

As far as I have been able to ascertain, a similar belief in immediate absolution after confession to God through prayer is held by Tutsi Christians. In a few cases it had taken a couple of days before the person in question "felt peace inside", but, in general, immediate forgiveness is counted upon.

One question that remains to be investigated regarding confession in the traditional context is whether an individual confessed the actual truth or made a confession according to established patterns of cultural expectations. It appears

(55) See "Pursuit of Health", p. 147

(56) Lucy Mair, Witchcraft, p. 170

that prophylactic confession, forestalling potential curses, would have no reason to deal with anything but the truth. Confession after conviction, however, as in many witchcraft cases, or when sickness or accident 'reveals' acute guilt may fall into a different category.

Several reports tell of witchcraft confessions, faithfully following established patterns of witchcraft beliefs. We may here deal with similar psychological conditions as those prompting certain persons to "confess" to the police crimes which they have never committed, as they for some reason are ridden with acute guilt feelings. Such culturally expected confessions may, in Tshwa context, be conditioned by the unbearable pressure of societal conviction, and would simultaneously serve as a powerful re-inforcement of the beliefs themselves. Field's observations in Ghana abound with people's self-accusations of witchcraft, even without societal conviction. Such "confessions", it would seem, do not remove the evil from a person but rather confirm and strengthen the feeling of guilt, thus leading to serious mental trouble.

This matter has been insufficiently investigated among Tshwa, and it may be found that there is a potential risk that too close identification of Christian confession with its counterpart in the traditional context would lead to confessions following an expected pattern. At present, this risk seems rather remote as there are few precedents of such Christian patterns, but Sandkies's observation among Zionists in Zululand points to the possibility: "No confession is regarded as complete until sexual transgressions are mentioned by the baptizee". (1971)

At present, cases of Protestants confessing their sins to a fellow man, minister or lay, are very rare. All informants gave a negative answer to the question: "Do Tshwa Christians

(27) D. Sandkies, Bantu Prophets in South Africa, p. 211

ians confess their sins to a pastor?".

"You see", one confided, "if we should go to a pastor and tell him what we do, oh, this would have to be discussed among the church elders (komati ya madota), and they may cut me off as a church member".

This evidence, and my own experience, make it clear that Tshwa Protestants do not trust their ministers with their secrets. Too often, it seems, sins confessed in complete confidence have been aired by Church leaders in committee sessions and led to disciplinary action. No wonder that Tshwa Christians make their confessions to God only! In one instance, I was told by a young Methodist in a mine compound that he had been to the Catholic 'padre' to confess his sins, because "there is no opportunity for this in our Church".

The tendency among Tshwa Protestants to confess to God only is a sign of the drastically reduced significance of 'social sin' in terms of broken relationships. The relationship that really matters is the one with God, as He is conceived as 'Giver of Life', and this relation can be kept intact without the interference of anyone else, including the Church and its leaders. The Protestant doctrine of "the priesthood of all believers", taken separately, makes any mediator superfluous. (58)

The social difficulties are many. It is that the majority of sins which Christians consciously commit, are of a social nature, while the sense of guilt is largely being projected in a religious direction.

Confession, in itself, in an institutional sense, healed the rift between offender and offended in the traditional society, while the offenders watched, and often were propitiated, too. On the other hand, the Sky Power (Tilo) was never involved, as there was no relationship between Tilo and men possible to break.

(58) See *Church, Sacrifice and Sacraments*, p. 160

Most Christians understand both their relationship with God and with the wronged person to be broken by sin, but the only relation that, in general, is restored through the process of confession is the one to God! Thus, the matter is often regarded as finished without any social reconciliation taking place.

As has been demonstrated earlier in this chapter, however, a difference is experienced between in-church social relations and those outside. Restoration of in-church relationships may be seen in more urgent light than others, provided that a reconciliation attempt will not bring any accusations over the offender!

Social or religious salvation?

Evil can never be allowed to have the last word in a human society. The sense of guilt makes man press towards some process of liberation. Thus, sin is unbearable without the possibility of forgiveness, or, in another term: salvation.

Being based on a cyclical world view, Tshwa culture offers a type of salvation that widely differs from the Christian concept. Christianity which is built upon an apocalyptic view of world and life, makes salvation count only partly in the earthly existence, as a preparation for the final salvation, given through 'eternal life'. Against this, we see the Tshwa concept of salvation as dealing entirely with the material world, leading towards the traditional ideal of 'sufficient life'.

Andersson has found that, to the Congolese, "salvation is in fact good health, a long life, prosperous offspring, and abundance of possessions, etc." (19). It would seem that, among the Tshwa these are seen as fruits of salvation rather

(19) E. Andersson, op. cit. p. 148

(or, rather, the Church) does not yet assist the Tshwa in accordance with their frame of reference. It is therefore probable that 'social salvation' is sought by many in a syncretistic mixture, while the 'religious salvation' is expected through following "the Law of Christ".

(and others like March) does not yet respect the Tshwa in accordance with their frame of reference. It is therefore probable that 'social salvation' is sought by many in a mixture of mixture, while the 'religious salvation' is sought through following "the law of Christ".

10. DEATH AND LIFE ETERNAL

Among all peoples, death is seen as inevitable, and yet the reality of death is dreaded. Among several peoples of Africa, myths tell of death as an intrusion, and originally intended by the Sky-Tower (Tila). Also the Tswana have a mythical explanation of death:

"The old people tell us that death arises from the fatal disagreement between Khutanyani and his wife Makikuvani, who were the first people on this earth. They had appeared (ka dawa) from the reeds in the North, emerging with two animals. Khutanyani had a dog, with which he hunted and killed other animals. Makikuvani had a hare cat, which made her happy by killing mice.

One day, the dog died. Khutanyani told his wife: My dog has died. Come and help me wake it up again! But Makikuvani refused to help her husband revive his dog. So Khutanyani kept quiet and pulled his dog away, leaving it in the forest.

After some time, the cat which was Makikuvani's joy also died. Then she said to her husband: Let us wake up the dog! But Khutanyani refused, saying: What about the other dog, what you did not help me to wake up my dog?

Thus in two days both the 'life-brothers' (abulo wa watshe) died. Since then, they were not able to revive anything on this earth, even until this day. Thus, we all die! (1)

In spite of the realization that death is an inevitable end of all human life, traditional Tswana seem always to suspect at ulterior forces behind this dreadful event. Most often, it is said, the spirits-of-revenge, are blamed by the divining bones, thus setting the Tswana in line with most other African peoples. (2) Ancestral spirits are seldom seen

(1) Translated from Bhuku go Banya.

(2) Cf. J. Ntuli, African Religions and Philosophy, p. 15.

as causes of death. It is obviously in their own interest that their demoniacs continue to live. Sickness-bringing foreign spirits (masodiki) would not, in general, be blamed for death, either.

Among Tswana Christians, the general understanding is that "God has ordered our days", and nothing can change this original decision. Whether a person dies young because of an accident, or in the old age, it will all refer back to the fact that "God has made the number of our days different". This does not preclude the possibility of witchcraft to enter into the picture. "I am sure witches can cause damage, but they cannot take away the soul of the person", said one informant, while another alleged that "Even if they can kill - and I believe they can, as there are so many clever people - this cannot be done, unless the days of that person have come to an end, according to God's decision".

The strict measurement of our days is also referred to in the case of prayers for sick people. "People can die in spite of prayers for them if their time has come. We may pray and do everything for a sick, but he will still die".

The nature of death

Death (lafa, or lafa) is a curse to the Tswana. Although a continued existence for the spirit-of-the-dead is taken for granted, death itself puts an inevitable end to real life (matsoho). The common expression for death, "I humale" (= "he has passed") certainly leaves the door open for continued activity, but, as Mithi puts it, "there is nothing to hope for" in death. (3) Other expressions show more clearly that death is the end: "He has disappeared" (In'wilele) is often heard in this connection. "I bafila" (= ill. "he is evil") is the term which most clearly indicated the great dread with which Tswana regard death.

(3) J. Ntsh, op. cit. p. 165

Not only does death break the kinsman away from his living relatives. It also brings a potential curse on everybody who is related to the dead person. Everyone concerned enters into a liminal state, in which several precautions are necessary, lest death may claim another victim within the group.

Traditionally, the whole kin-group, including those who were married to kin-members, gathered at the stricken village as soon as the drums had announced the death of a kinsman. All ordinary activities were suspended. Particular prohibitions were made against any hard work, as agriculture, or building, while "fetching water and firewood" was allowed as being necessary. All sexual activities were likewise prohibited. All men stayed around their fire, and the women around theirs. No connection between the sexes was allowed until "the weeping had been scattered" (ku kungulasa xirilo).

As these people were now "black" (vantima) because of death, they could not take part in any sacrifices of any kind, outside of the activities in the death village. They were not "white", (pari) (la ya Bawungil), and, consequently, "they just sat".

The greatest beginning was that one element making people "black". But, above all, it was the "death contamination" (tinzaka) that worked this immediate change upon everyone related to the dead person. Moreover a relative may be, the death of a kinsman contaminated him and exposed him to special danger, as he then became particularly prone to accident or ill-health.

The death contamination extended also to the whole village where the deceased had lived, and to all his belongings. Naturally, it emerged from the dead person himself thus making it particularly dangerous to touch the corpse.

The picture

Elements from various informants have been combined to give the following picture:

When a man had died, people gathered outside his house, but nobody ventured in. This was taboo. A few men (madota) were chosen from his close kin, to go in and prepare the corpse for burial. This they did by folding the limbs of the deceased, to make him approximate a foetus-position. However, the corpse must not be tied in this position, as it was believed that the spirit-of-the-dead (nguluve) would be angry if he were tied and could not move freely in the spirit world.

No one else but these men - who were now called "hyenas" (tirhisi) - was allowed to have anything to do with the burial itself. Then, they went outside the village to find a suitable spot for the grave, which was dug in such a way that a hollowed cave (muti = "village") was left in one side of its walls. As they removed the corpse from the house, all other people in the village were inside the other houses, with doors closed, as it was taboo to see the corpse.

The corpse was placed lying down in its foetus-position in the cave (muti) and was covered with a grass-mat. Several of the deceased's belongings were placed in the grave, although most usable items were kept on the grave-side, later to be returned to the village.

A few informants mention the killing of a hen in, or at the side of the grave, as an offering to "the other dead of the kin, asking them to receive well the deceased". Few details of this rite are known.

Those kinmen who had now arrived at the grave, three went well into the grave, which was then completely filled by the "hyenas". They took care to remove all impurities in the soil, as roots or stones. Finally, they scratched the covering soil unevenly (ku seletela) to make it impossible to discover except by themselves.

On leaving the grave, one of the "hyenas" took two branches, one alive and one dry. Without looking back, he threw the dead branch back towards the grave, with the words, "Go with your death" (zala ni kufa ka wena!). Then he threw the live branch in the direction of the village, saying, "Go with our life" (Tamba ni kuhanya ka nina!).

During the funeral, the women had been busy sweeping the whole village, "to remove the footprints of the dead". A n'anga had prepared water with medicines, for the first purification, particularly of the "hyenas" but also of everyone who had thrown soil on the grave. They had to be purified in four different ways.

1. They washed hands, arms and feet in medicated water (mati ni matluka).
2. An egg was smashed, and the contents mixed with other medicines, immediately used for a second "wash";
3. Excrement of hens were put on a fire, and all those to be purified inhaled the smoke;
4. The hen giving the egg used for purification was killed and its liver crushed together with some leaves. This mixture was used for another ceremonial washing.

Another variant is that a pine-apple was crushed and used in one washing "to remove the message of the soil" ku susa mahunga ni misava). (4) One informant also stressed that a hen was only killed when a man had died. In the case of a female deceased, a cock must be killed. (5) Snuff, poured out on a palm, was used by the "hyenas", for nasal inhalation.

Even if some local variations in burial rites can be found, the essential actions were the same. The necessity to "scratch" the grave, to make it impossible for witches to discover it, seems to be universal. Likewise, the prohibition against burying "sharp things" in the grave. One informant gave the following incident:

"An old man had said before he died, 'You must bury me in a sitting position. I also want to hold this table knife in this hand'. Now, our chief said that, 'In my country I do not want to hear of anyone buried sitting, or holding a knife'.

They (the relatives of the deceased) tried to force the matter, until the chief let them bury him sitting, but, he said, 'he must not have a knife in his hand'."

The first purification rite was primarily to do with the impurities arising from contact with the corpse and the grave. The actual death contamination (tingnake) still adhered to all houses and had to be removed a few days later, in consultation with the diviners of the whole village and all the relatives of the deceased.

(4) The soil is generally considered as belonging to the dead.

(5) Cf. the "extinguishing" of blood in sacrifice, p. 125

Removing the death contamination

About five days after the death - one month when a chief had died - the n'an returned to the village to lead the rite of purification and "to scatter the weeping" (ku huan-lu shih). This rite was also called sa-pu-lu-khuan ("spreading out the weeping") as the different fires around which the men and the women had gathered during the days of weeping, were now extinguished. All ashes from them were spread over the village, and new fires could not be lit until the cleansing was done.

The n'an prepared a big pot of water and medicine (leaves). With a branch dipped into this mixture, he sprinkled the whole village. Li lo khuan va va shuk - lit. "the sword water of leaves", and all the belongings of the dead, particularly his knife, axes and axes. This special attention to belongings made of iron seems to be connected with the danger of burying anything of this nature in the grave: as they were potentially extremely dangerous if left for the use of the dead, they also might cause trouble for the living, if they were not properly purified.

When the village and belongings had thus been purified, all people in the village were likewise sprinkled with medicated water, "both in front and back".

Meanwhile, another pot was working. The n'an here prepared a "porridge" (shih) of millet or maize, mixing in certain medicines. This was the shih-jun for unknown etiological variations, meant for the shih "-ja", meaning "death". This porridge had to be shared by everyone contaminated by this death. "In a similar way an epidemic is cured". And the n'an subsequently removed the rest of the shih-jun around a certain tree in the village. Any kinship who had not taken part in this ceremonial cleansing, was obliged to first stand under this tree on arrival in the village, before he could be welcomed to sit down. It was believed that such a ceremony would cleanse him from contamination.

The last rite connected with the purifying medicine was the "pouring out of the pot" of medicine (ku halata nolo). This was done in the same way as at the "Great Sacrifice", (6) and kinsmen not taking part might be sent certain pieces of clothing, which individuals had worn while "pouring".

Besides the purification by medicine, certain symbolic acts were necessary. These were combined in the term ku cinga nhalaka ("to shave off the contamination"):

As dangerous as sexual relations were during the period of "weeping", as necessary were they in the rites of purification. However, certain persons only had to perform this act. Furthermore, it had to be done in a ritual way, as certain intermediaries.

When a child had died, the parents were asked by the n'anga to have intercourse, and the following morning they shaved the hair of all mourners, including each other.

In the case of a man leaving a widow, she had to be "washed" (ku hlazana) by a man from her husband's kin-group. This is obviously part of the custom of levirate, but I am told by informants that the man "washing" the widow is not necessarily her new husband. "Any relative of the deceased husband may be designated by the n'anga to perform this act".

The morning after this ritual act, the man and woman are given certain medicines by the n'anga, and then proceed to give water for "washing" to everyone in the village. All hair of the mourners is subsequently shaved off.

The sexual cleansing of a man having been left at his wife's death, can be performed by a woman from her own kin. Often this is the deceased wife's hlazana (brother's daughter), who is sent to do this duty. She may then stay in the village as the new wife - and mother of her aunt's children. (7)

(6) See "Worship, Sacrifice and Sacraments", pp. 120-121

(7) Note that the word hlazana, from the verb ku hlaza = "to wash" is closely connected with "washing off the contamination".

In case of a woman's kin not sending a girl to "wash the contamination" of her husband, all relation between the man and his official kin was broken off. Not even the woman's children were then allowed to have contact with her kin-group.

A Christian funeral

I have personally not taken part in many Tswana burials, but the following is an account of my observations of a Christian funeral in Tswana country:

"As we arrived, people were standing or sitting everywhere in the stricken village, and ordinary greetings with maintained took considerable time. People seemed rather relaxed, and the conversation turned around most different subjects.

One of the houses in the village was surrounded by persons, who, one by one, greeted the husband of the deceased and expressed their grief by the words "hi gi chavile" ("We have feared it" - the traditional greeting of mourning), and some gave a few words of comfort from the Bible. The widower responded, thanking the person for the words and the love expressed by coming to the funeral. He was visibly moved, but I could see little weeping in the village.

In the hut of mourning, where the coffin was open until shortly before the funeral procession, Methodist women, some in their "anklras", were standing silently, but informally. Outside of the door, one sister of the deceased, and one aunt were sitting, responding in a silent way to greetings and consolation.

The minister entered the hut, together with as many as could get in, a hymn was sung and prayer said. Then the coffin was carried out by some men, and, led by the minister, all present followed in procession from the village to the special Christian burial place about 300 yards away.

A few sang "I am a visitor on the earth" during the procession, but most people followed silently.

At the graveside - the grave was a rectangular pit, without the "cover" on the side - the coffin was set down, and the burial ritual according to the Methodist tradition was performed by the minister, whereupon the coffin was lowered into the grave.

When the minister had taken a handful of soil and scattered it over the coffin, all present followed his example. Some of the women did this wailing quietly, and the sister of the deceased unwrapped a parcel which she had carried under her arm. The contents were found to be large bundles of women's clothes, obviously dresses and other clothing of the deceased, which the sister placed in the grave. She also went around the grave several times, pouring talcum powder on the coffin, while another woman seemed to pour some water from a bottle.

None of these activities brought any visible reaction from anyone. Only when one woman began wailing loudly, she was hastily restrained by the minister.

Before the grave was completely filled, most people had returned to the village. Just at the entrance some large basins filled with water had been placed, and everyone, before entering, washed his hands. A few washed their faces, and I noticed one man pouring some water also over his feet.

At a table in the village, the visiting minister sat collecting money from everyone present, making a careful list of all contributions. This was later to be handed to the address "T. Comfort Inc" (the chavaleis). Meanwhile, some were being served on tables, and some tea was served to all who had taken part in the funeral. A final prayer was offered by the visiting minister before people began leaving the village.

There are obviously many other elements in such a funeral, which would be grasped only by observation. Before and after the actual funeral, several different songs were performed, serving to assist and comfort the bereaved. What struck me most, however, was the purely solemn dignity of the whole ceremony, in spite of its simple setting, and, undoubtedly, the almost complete absence of visitors. It would appear that non-Christians took their cue entirely from the Christians, with the possible exception of the non-methodist sister of the deceased, performing certain peculiar acts at the grave.

Christians and death

It would seem that the sphere of death and all pertaining rituals have been changed more decisively through Christian influence than anything else in the Tahua traditional culture.

Here, it can be said without hesitation that Christianity does not only mean new attitudes among Christians but a process of cultural change within the whole Tshwa community.

a. Death Contamination

Attitudes vary with individuals, but, on the whole, it seems well demonstrated that Tshwa Christians do not worry much about death contamination (tinzhaka). The observable fact is the institutionalized non-fear of such contamination, upheld by manifest behaviour at burials, but several informants gave the positive affirmation that "tinzhaka do not adhere to believers". It would seem, though, that this freedom from contamination is - at least in the thinking of many - limited to those of 'strong faith'. "If you are afraid that you may get sick because of contamination, surely you will get sick! But then you are weak in your faith!" This statement may imply that there is, in fact, an evil power in death contamination, but that 'strong faith' surrounds the Christian like a protecting shield - similar to the 'magic fence' around the village protecting it from witchcraft attacks. On the other hand, it may simply stress the power of fear as a sickness-causing agent.

However this may be, the ordinary Christian attitude towards death contamination seems to a large extent the fear of the corpse, as well as the risk of taking part in funerals. Thus, participation in the traditional dance is no longer felt to be dangerous, and dances are not limited to the kin-group and those neighbours who may have felt constrained to take part. They have rather acquired an obligatory character for all Christians in the neighbourhood, irrespective of Church belonging.

b. Christian and traditional purification

The rite of purification after burial is obligatory among these Christians, as in other parts of Africa. This is the

ceremony of the washing of hands immediately after the return from the grave. (8) Several ministers questioned on this point, claim that this washing "is done only to wash away the dirt of the soil" (as everyone has thrown some soil into the grave), but the immediacy and the structural performance of this ceremony suggest that it is, in fact a Christian adaptation of an ancient ritual. The remarkable fact that such washing of hands is prohibited within the 'Bhanga Church' among the Xhosa in East London, "since this was traditionally done in order to drive away misfortune", further supports this assumption. (9)

The ritual cleansing of all items belonging to the deceased has also, I was told, lost its importance among Christians. "I can take a book belonging to the dead and read it, and nothing will happen to me", said one informant. The act of putting the clothing of the deceased into the grave suggests, however, that the old fear of sickness caused by inherited and not properly purified things (xivenze) may still be real to many persons. One man insisted that "if you are using something inherited from a dead person and feel in your heart that this may be dangerous, then you will certainly be sick!" It must be admitted that the whole area of xivenze in modern context has not yet been adequately investigated.

In the case of the customary purification through eating the life-plant (umfundo), or alternatively, by circling around the grave where this practice has not ceased, information shows that this practice is still in use. Several mentioned that relatives attempted to force them to perform this rite before entering their village. Nevertheless, the same informant claimed that they had been able to enter and to

(8) Cf. A.A. Pauw Religion in a Tswana chiefdom, p. 158
A.A. Dubb, The role of the Church in an urban African society, II, p. 184

(9) A.A. Dubb, ibid.

without acceding to the request.

The significance of mifa-jungo has evidently been interpreted in Christian conceptualization, as two examples of "Christian" mifa-jungo. The Bible is our mifa-jungo, as the 'eating' of the Eucharist is our guarantee of eternal life". The Holy Communion was likened to mifa-jungo, having a direct resemblance with the symbolic action

significantly, the sexual part of traditional death customs tends to cause most direct problems for the Christian. Several cases are reported of Christian women who have been left widowed at the death of their husbands. Christian relatives have insisted upon a traditional funeral. Unfortunately, I am not certain whether the bride-price belongs to her own kin or her late husband's. In the case of levirate would be out of the question as the woman is concerned, as this might potentially lead her into a polygynous union, it would not be surprising to find that the insistence on this sexual purification belongs to her own kin-group, as this might be keen on her speedy re-marriage, bringing new ngwawo (bride-wealth) into the group. With the severe sanctions placed upon relations with a "fornicated" woman, it would be a rare exception if she could be married without proper purification.

From a Church point of view, this custom of purification has become a subject of disciplinary action, particularly in cases where such sexual relations have led to pregnancy. The Church, naturally, places such cases in the adultery category rather than to give them any special "purification status".

The Bereaved state and the Christian

It is customary for Christians who have been bereaved to stay quietly in their villages until "the scattering of the weeping" (ngwawo), but they are in no way barred

from taking part in Church services. During the short time between death and burial, some Christian neighbours stay in the village for prayer and practical assistance in preparing the corpse and the grave. About a few days after the burial, it is usual that the pastor and a group of Church members visit the bereaved fellow-Christians for prayer and comforting conversation. Very often, a special gift collected for the occasion is handed over at that time.

On the day of the funeral, it is customary "to set a date for the end of our special prayers". This corresponds to the traditional 'scattering the weeping' (ku bangalase xiril), but has kept only a little of the symbolism of the original act. "We sing the last songs, and the prayers speak of the need of the bereaved", explained one informant, but, beyond this, the occasion warrants no specific ritual. In this poverty of symbolic action, I cannot escape the notion that certain missionary attitudes have stifled the imagination of Christian people, leaving them with what may be described as 'perfectly safe features'.

Beyond these special prayers, there are, with one exception, no manifest signs of any recognition of a 'marginal state' in connection with death. I have not noticed any trace of the traditional belief that "persons black by death contamination are dangerously prone to sickness or accidents". One sign, however, is the black clothes of mourning (zilenda), which are said to be fairly common. And evidently have been adopted from the Portuguese mourning customs. One informant gave the following information:

"When my mother had died, father bought a black shirt, which he wore. And my sister wore a black dress which she wore. But my brother and myself did not buy anything special at that time.

There are some who also wear something on their heads. This is according to the will of the individual; because this does not carry any special significance. But when a person has a dress made for her, she may use a strip of the black cloth to tie around her head".

Such black clothes seem to be more common in towns than in the countryside, obviously dependent upon the influence from the Portuguese. As the custom of ceremonial shaving of the hair has been renounced by Christians, and, likewise the traditional custom of tying a strip of palm-leaf around the head (ka haka silila) until the time of "scattering the weeping", such silenda have an obvious function of marking the liminal state. Nevertheless, they do not need to carry any deeper significance than similar customs of mourning dress in several European countries.

Within the Tshwa Protestant community, there does not seem to exist any specific rules regarding zilenda, although I have heard some voices raised against this custom. According to informants, the zilenda are removed at the time of "final prayers", but some indicate that this occasion may be delayed until a funeral service 4 days after the death, or even later.

Christian influence on non-Christian attitudes

One final important difference between traditional customs regarding death and burial and Christian ones, is the widening of the concern outside the kinship limits. As has been pointed out in relation to the Christian understanding of wunlengeli ("fellowship" / sense of belonging⁽¹⁰⁾), one decisive distinction of Christian wunlengeli is that the Church group always takes a great responsibility for the burial of a member. The kin-group is, of course, not relieved from its obligations, but, in many modern instances where individuals are far away from their kinship, this aspect of Christian wunlengeli seems to play an outstanding role for the sense of security.

It could be expected that relations between Christians and non-Christians in the sphere of death and burial might

(10) See this concept developed on pp. 87-97

become rather tense, as strong emotions are stirred up, and customs and manifest values clash. To give an adequate picture of these relationships, thorough investigation among non-Christians would be necessary. My present material indicates, however, that non-Christians are now becoming so used to usages foreign to their own culture that they seem to bear with equanimity any violation of their traditional rules in this realm.

Thus, it is found, that traditional Tshwa - in spite of their own continued emphasis on the necessity of purification rites - accept Christian kinship into their fellowship, although they know that the Christians, from their viewpoint, are still contaminated by death. This fact may speak of tolerance, but I would further suggest that these tribesmen probably regard certain Christian rites as having a similar effect to Christian and their own purification ceremonies. Holy Communion may be a pertinent case.

In one instance, we find that non-Christian Tshwa see a positive value also for themselves in Christian burial rites:

"One day, our Chief (Cabo) came, and we sat together, talking. He said, 'As you know, in this region nobody used to walk around at night. There is a river, Nyachange, where we go for water. But here nobody would go very early in the morning to the river. Why? Our country had so many scaring things (amisi) that people were frightened to go in the darkness, as ghosts might attack them. Even you might have stopped soon to go early to the river..

But, when you believers began coming to this country, praying every time there is a death, all these scaring things have run away. Therefore, we do not want to bury a person according to old custom, even if he is no believer. You have to help us to offer prayers, so that our own dead not come back to frighten us'.

While we have found that Christianity has not yet penetrated the whole field of life among the Tshwa, leaving the Tshwa in an unimproved state as far as sickness and accidents are concerned, (11) death is obviously one area where Christian

(11) See "Pursuit of Health", pp. 203-207

faith makes a significant difference. Wilson made a similar observation among the Nyakyusa, and Anderson gives this example from the Congo:

A new Christian in the region of Ipini was at the point of death. His wife and his sister-in-law began to weep. He said to them: 'Why are you weeping? You ought only to be praying'." (12)

I suggest that the public nature of a burial has in some measure forced Christian Tshwa to manifest their faith at this occasion much more visibly than in the semi-private atmosphere of sickness. The main reason for the significant changes of attitude as regards death is nevertheless to be found in the great Christian emphasis on 'eternal life', being the hope for the Christian even beyond death.

Ancestral Spirits and Christian Faith

'Life after death' according to traditional Tshwa understanding is a dull copy of ordinary life. While death cuts off visible communion with the departed kinsman, it is not seen as putting the deceased out-of-reach. In a real sense, death is "the final promotion on the social ladder of prestige". (13) It has been amply demonstrated that the spirits of dead kinsmen (tinguluve) are seen as a continuing influence upon their living descendants, and I find that Christian Tshwa continue experiencing this influence to an important extent. The rapid spread of tinisa, the special type of memorial services, (14) is adequate proof of this fact.

The Protestant Churches among the Tshwa have, together with most other Christian missions in Africa, declared the tinguluve completely out-of-bounds. They have even been said

(12) G. Anderson, Churches at the grass-roots, p.120
H. B. Wilson, Communal rituals of the Nyakyusa
pp. 177-179

(13) See further pp. 13-14

(14) Memorial services are described on pp. 142-143

to "belong to Satan", when the rationalistic approach has not prompted missionaries - and their loyal followers - to declare that "the tinguluve do not exist at all". Against such a background, it is important to ponder the significance of the statement from my best educated informant: "The spirit of remembering the tinguluve will take a long time to disappear in the life of us black men". This was not at all said in a vein of rebellion, but as a simple statement of fact.

It would seem that the tinguluve have suffered the same fate among Tshwa Christians as beliefs in witchcraft and spirits-of-revenge. Being declared non-entities in the Christian context, they have stayed outside of a positive Christian influence, but remaining an integral part of people's frame of reference. Thus, Christians have officially left behind all beliefs in their ancestors, while the same have continued playing an important role in their subconscious.

Several informants gave examples of how these beliefs come to the surface at critical turns of life. (15) Only one report will be quoted at this juncture, given by a lay-leader concerning his days as a young Christian:

"I was becoming desperate, because my wife and I were getting no children. I prayed to God, asking Him again and again, 'Why can I not have a child?' Then, I got a boy, but he died very soon.

I was very disheartened, until I thought I had better talk to my father (baba) and ask him. So I said, 'As you have left this world and become a nguluve, who is going to continue your name? I was born by you, but I have no offspring. As you are together with God bringing us men children (marumbu), who will continue your name?'

Now this is what amazed me that later on I got a child, and now I have five children!"

(15) See pp. 117 and 142

This man would probably have been appalled at the thought of worshipping his dead father. But he found it quite natural to talk to him. Whether this conversation should be termed 'prayer' or not is beside the point. What matters most in this connection is the obvious naturalness with which the man continued his contact with his father "beyond the grave".

It is, indeed, remarkable that Christianity has survived among Africans in spite of the rampant violation of kinship laws committed through its rejection of the ancestral spirits (tinguluve). I know that it has been suggested by some white Church leaders in Tshwa country that Christians "should not even think of their deceased relatives". It would seem that such teaching contributes to leaving Tshwa Christians in a cultural vacuum, or in a state of completely divided loyalty, as their dead ones are part and parcel of their own lives.

From a Christian viewpoint, it seems imperative for the Church to come to terms with the tinguluve, taking Tshwa beliefs in them seriously and providing for some ways and means to remember the dead ancestors without offending the tenets of the Christian faith.

It has even been suggested, outside of Tshwa context, that the role of the ancestral spirits may be a crucial one in opening the gate to new dimensions of Christian faith among Africans. "Is it not time for the Church to learn to give the Communion of Saints the centrality which the soul of Africa craves?" exclaims Taylor, (16) and Parrinder puts a similar observation in the following words:

"In African life, the dead are of great importance. It is significant that some of the sects have one of their chief times of fasting and seclusion at All Saints. Roman Catholics have masses for the dead. Protestants have memorial services, though too much repetition of these is officially discouraged as tending to excessive expense and display..." (17)

(16) J. Taylor, The Primal Vision, p. 166

(17) G. Parrinder, Religion in an African city, p. 146

In going deeper into the theological issues involved in this matter, Sundkler quotes a part of the Apostles' Creed, "He (Jesus) descended into Sheol ('Heli') as a key to an understanding of the life of the deceased ancestors". (18) Without developing this theme in any detail, it is significant to note that this very part of the Apostles' Creed has been put out of the "Methodist version", which is being used among the Tshwa. (19)

What has 'Spirits' in store?

However important the tinguluve's role may be, their actual existence does not seem to hold out any promise "beyond the grave". Death does not lose its dread to any degree through the conviction that the deceased are "promoted" to spiritual elders. Mbiti suggests that this has to do with the absence of belief in the rising "to higher spiritual or ethical heights" after death. "One is simply gathered to one's forefathers, and that is about all. There is no spiritual stature to be acquired: thieves remain thieves, kind people continue to be kind, of infinite". (20)

The Tshwa hold that the tinguluve have their abode in the earth. Even if this signifies that they 'own the soil' and have power over its use, they are believed to carry on a rather miserable existence. Like other African departed, they 'acquire more power', which is not, however, a reward, but something that comes to them like old age coming upon everyone. (21) Their normal activity in their dark abode is sleep. The performer of a murafu usually finishes his prayer to his tinguluve with the words "Etisalani khwatani

(18) J. Sundkler, The Christian Ministry in Africa, p.112

(19) Thema to Ivangeli, p. 262

(20) J. Mbiti, "Eschatology" in Dickson-Eltingworth Religious Revivalism and African Beliefs, pp.163-166

(21) J. Mbiti, Op. cit., p. 163

Humulani, mu nga hi vukeli!" ("Sleep well! Rest, and do not wake up to harm us!"). (22)

Another disconcerting feature of the timbalwe's existence is that they are completely dependent upon their living descendants for their continuance.

For the person who dies childless there is also the probability of being forgotten after some time, and thus losing one's personal spirit-existence. "Death becomes, then, a gradual process which is not completed until some years after the initial physical death". (23) Turner refers to this as "social death", which one of my informants termed "the second death, which as Christians do not need to experience". In the case of the Hambo, this "social death" is dramatically symbolized, when a childless person has died:

"When an Hambo dies, a black line is drawn with charcoal from his navel downwards and over his genitalia, indicating that his name, and with it certain vital elements of his personality, must never be inherited by the children of his kin". (24)

A similar symbolic action is known from the Tshwa, but the dread of dying childless is not noted. It thus becomes clear that the existence of the Hambo is rather precarious, having no guarantee of a continuance after death which may come with child.

'Eternal life' - the religious summum bonum

This is the background against which the Christian element of 'eternal life' should be seen. In spite of being foreign to the Yamwo culture, it has become the religious summum bonum for Yamwo Christians. "Jesus said, I am going to prepare a

(22) Cf. p. 39-40

(23) J. Mbiti, African Religions and Philosophy, p. 159

(24) W. Turner, Drum of Affliction, p. 28

room for you. If I keep close to Christ, I will have a better life in eternity", was a Tshwa woman's spontaneous response to my question: "What is the best in Christianity?". I am confident that the majority of Tshwa Christians would join her in this affirmation. (15)

Thus, the Christian belief in the reality behind the statement of Jesus that "he who believes in me shall live even if he dies", (16) has struck an extraordinarily responsive chord in the Tshwa. In fact, I presume, that no realistic solution to the problem of death was offered within their traditional belief system. Consequently, this biblical promise, coupled with teaching about heaven as the abode of light and perfect peace and happiness, opened up completely new vistas. Continuance of timuluvu was seen as a dreary existence at best, sharply contrasted against the bright promise of wutomi ('life') without end, and without the conditions traditionally stipulated for a transcendent satisfaction beyond the grave. (17)

"When we believers leave this world, we go to stay in heaven with the Father. We do not need to be resurrected by sacrifices, because all troubles are finished now; the one who has come to the Father can neither trouble nor help those who are left on earth."

The dead keep on crying trouble, because they are still suffering like on earth. And they do not want to suffer more.

In traditional terms, it would seem that the 'medicine of life' (mbhulo wa wutomi) which was lost through the disagreement between the First Two Ancestress, Khuzahyani and Mbedikwani, (18) has been rediscovered in the Christian context. This is the point, says Mbiti, where "African religions

(15) Mt. Loma 1:13;

(16) John 11:26;

(17) Mt. Loma 1:14;

and philosophy must admit a defeat", and continues:

"These traditional religions cannot but remain tribal and nationalistic, since they do not offer for mankind at large, a way of 'escape', a message of 'redemption' (however that may be conceived)". (78)

On the other hand, the objection may be raised that Christianity has directed the thoughts of the believers so vividly towards 'eternal life' that large spheres of life on earth have been left untouched. (79) There is evidence that 'saving the soul for Heaven' was the only pronounced purpose of some pioneer missionaries among the Tshwa. (80) One even gets the impression that some pioneers deemed it hopeless to render any real change to the life of the 'raw heathen', except preparing the way to Heaven. (81) This one-sided purpose was not shared by all, however, and it is possible that many very practical considerations came into the foreground than were ever reported 'home' in articles and letters. (81)

The way to 'eternal life' is understood as "continuing to worship God and to keep the law of Christ". The 'legalism' involved in this attitude has been discussed in a former chapter. (82) But at this juncture it is interesting to notice how such 'legalism' may even, in Tshwa thinking, open the gate to 'eternal life' for those outside of the Christian sphere. Some informants insisted that tinguluwe may have entered Heaven, if their souls belonged to God.

(78) J. Smith, African Religions and Philosophy, p. 99

(79) Cf. criticism towards witchcraft/spirits-of-revenge, pp. 196-197

(80) Cf. J. Smith, Dr. Harry Wilson, a Pioneer Missionary, p. 12, 197

(81) See "New Christianity: new introduction", pp. 64-68

(82) "God, Man and Salvation", pp. 222-223

Heaven and the tingulave

With the strong filial bonds defined by Tshwa traditional culture as a given, it is not surprising to find that Tshwa Christians devote considerable thinking to the fate of their own ancestors. Naturally, such thoughts employ a considerable picture of traditional concepts and Christian doctrines. One important factor in the insignificant part played by any doctrine of 'hell' and its eternal punishment. Obviously, the very realization that all tingulave - according to some Christian teaching - would suffer in hell, stirs up the defense mechanism in Tshwa thinking. Therefore, it has been imperative for them somehow to carry their ancestors over into the new context.

In order to solve this problem, some informants leave the tingulave completely outside of the Christian sphere. They are not to be thought of in Christian terms, and consequently they do not need being transferred to hell. As one expressed it:

"The tingulave have been tested, and it was found that they were not accustomed to God, neither to Satan. They are in between. Tingulave are people of this earth. Therefore they must stay right here. They have not received the inheritance of Heaven, because they did not work for God. But neither did they work for Satan, and cannot go to either hell."

However, a large number of informants make a clear distinction between "good tingulave and bad ones". This distinction is not primarily based upon the ethical character of these spirits living on earth, even if there is some evidence that a morally 'evil' person is believed to become an 'evil' spirit after death. (35) 'Evil' tingulave are evading their living descendants of their misdeeds by 'coming up in the divine house as a frequent visitor of the living'. Such tingulave demonstrate openly,

(35) Cf. "Traditional Tshwa beliefs", p. 38

...they are still on this earth. ... "Send me trouble". But ... are never mentioned by ... As they, ... themselves, they need ... with any suffering. ... of similar thoughts. ... stated: "When a certain ancestor ... reached Heaven". ... certain problems to ortho- ... that Tewa Christians are ... doctrinal criteria in this ... that tingaluve could ... one Methodist

... problem of not having ... that there are works (mitiro) that ... have ... because of their good

... sign that a dead ... Heaven". When somebody dies with ... clear in- ... full of sin and hatred and will surely be ... He is believed ... spirit. "Such a ... back from heaven and will keep on ... On the other hand, if ... he has entered

... but it ... of the Tewa area. It ... with a tradition- ... that the ... between living men and the ... This belief would obviously presuppose the ... tingaluve to have free access to the abode of Tilo.

Fear of Hell is a weak factor

I find Mr. Eberhart, concerned with these matters as not, in general, concerned with the many other spiritual truths. It is noticeable in the New Testament - according to the Christian doctrine - that the 'fear' (34) - should be used in a way which is not by 'fear' alone, according to their understanding. But we were not presented with any Christian message. On this point, there is a clear agreement with the latest Christian missionary, as they said to the Americans: "We are the ones of ignorance, and we are not here. But we are not really speaking... in regard". (35)

The concept of hell is, in fact, on the fringe of their Christian faith. Furthermore, it is established itself in some considerable distance from regular Christian thinking.

Hell is in heaven, or rather in the air - according to their belief. It is clearly distinct from the place where the blessed dead are to live in eternity together with God the Father. But it is not far away, although passage from one to the other is impossible.

The Tswana have not been impressed by the three-layer world view which Europeans have brought into their Christian faith as an inheritance from paganism and Greek mythology, and which puts these places well below the ground. As hell is an entirely new concept to the Tswana, no traditional name could be used to designate this 'place of punishment'. The originally Greek word *hades* has therefore adapted to the Tswana language in the form *hades*.

In this situation, Tswana Christians have freely accepted their thinking about *hades* according to the New Testament

(34) See, e.g. Matthew 18:9

(35) See 1:3 (188)

texts that deal with the subject, for instance Matthew 25:31-46 and Luke 16:19-31. In the latter passage, the suffering Dives is able to look across the gulf between heaven and hell. Thus, the two places cannot be too far apart! In the Matthew passage, the 'evil people' are told "to go to the left", and several informants were as literal in their answers: "Hell is the left part of heaven. God's heaven and Satan's hell are like two towns. But you cannot go from one to the other".

Even if informants confirm the orthodox Christian belief that "evil people who do not obey the law of God go to hell after death", the doctrine definitely plays a subordinate role. The choice at death is rather between "going to heaven for the eternal life" and staying on earth as a troublesome ancestral spirit. Hell seems definitely to be reserved for those who have "served Satan during their lives", i.e. criminals (chrevonga) and witches. "They belong to Satan and will go to his place".

Eschatology in a cyclical context

In spite of the extraordinary emphasis on 'eternal life' among Tshwa Christians, this religious hope for the future does not seem to be linked at all with any eschatological theology. As a matter of fact, no thought of "an end to the present world order" was ever mentioned by any informant. I am certain that a considerable amount of eschatological teaching has been done through missionary preaching over the years, but I found little evidence of such teaching having left any significant trace.

This conspicuous absence is no doubt due to the fact that an eschatological end is almost inconceivable for minds steeped in a cyclical worldview. For traditional Tshwa, time literally goes round in circles: circles of seasons and circles of human lives, always starting afresh, and ever coming back to the same points along the circumference. Thus, time can-

not have an end, only a new beginning.

We are reminded again of Hbiti's statement concerning African conception of time:

"Time is a two-dimensional phenomenon, with a long past, a present and virtually no future... Actual time is therefore what is present and what is past. It moves 'backward' rather than 'forward'; and people set their minds not on future things, but chiefly on what has taken place". (36)

Such a statement seems to contradict the great Tshwa Christian hope for 'eternal life', for this from an orthodox Christian point of view is usually thought of as something in the future. But it seems feasible to assume that such an 'eternal life' is rather conceived of by Tshwa in relation to the presently living generation, and would thus "take place" in the past and the present! In other words, as soon as a Christian would die, and, according to his belief, enter the 'eternal life', he would belong to the past as far as his still living contemporaries are concerned. 'eternal life', thus, is an on-going concern, parallel with ordinary life, and not something that will begin somewhere in the distant future.

This reasoning that stands at odds with European ears, tallies well with Hbiti's development of the African concept of time. (37) And again, it reminds us that an eschatological end of time is extremely difficult to concretize from a cyclical world. Eschatology for Tshwa Christians, then, seems to have only temporal implications, as one after the other will leave the earthly scene and transfer to 'eternal life' which is held before him as the unerring hope for every faithful believer.

(36) J. Hbiti, African religion and philosophy, p. 17

(37) Ibid. p. 1 ff

11. TOWARDS SOME CONCLUSIONS: ADDITION OR DISPLACEMENT ?

"In view of such an account of the cultural differences, it is clear that Christianity is misplaced in Africa", ⁽¹⁾ exclaims Ram Desai, a writer with a certain claim to scientific treatment of his subject. His examples of cultural differences vary somewhat from the ones found in this dissertation, but it is conceivable that some of my material might have called forth the same conclusion.

This, however, is not the point at which I come out in this study. Cultural and religious differences between Christianity and 'Western culture' on the one hand, and Tshwa beliefs and customs on the other, have been demonstrated in this dissertation. Some of these have led to a continuous conflict, either openly between the official stand of the Church and any representative of Tshwa traditional life, or in the form of hidden conflicts of conscience in the individual Christian. Other demonstrated differences co-exist along with each other, and in a few instances Christian elements seem genuinely to have replaced the traditional.

In spite of a present standstill in numerical expansion, or even a certain decrease, ⁽²⁾ the Protestant Church is now an integral part of Tshwa society. It cannot, by any stretch of imagination, be dismissed as something "misplaced". The relevant question is rather: "Does the Protestant Church meet a truly felt

(1) R. Desai, "Christianity in danger", in R. Desai (ed), Christianity in Africa as seen by Africans, p.19
(2) In 1960, the Methodist Episcopal Church had a reported constituency of 35,001, while in 1967 it was 31,383 (Relatório Oficial....1960 and 1967)

need among the Tshwa, or is it mainly the religious sector of xilunru?" (3) In a similar vein, a question may be raised in connection with the historically pronounced purpose of Christianity in Africa "to replace heathenism, or, maybe, even to fill a cultural and religious vacuum": (4) "Has Christianity replaced Tshwa traditional beliefs and customs, or has it become an addition?"

All answers to such questions must, to some extent, be generalisations. To arrive at some answers, however, I want to make the following statements, based upon material in this dissertation: (5)

1. Protestant Christianity is understood by the Tshwa as an intellectual faith as opposed to their all-inclusive traditional way of life;

2. By applying rationalistic criteria, a large sector of Tshwa traditional beliefs has been left practically untouched by Protestant Christianity;

3. Protestant worship has not entered the vital field of 'rites of life crises', and can, on the whole, be considered as replacing communal rites;

4. A legalistic trend of the Protestantism introduced among the Tshwa has found ready acceptance;

5. Protestant Christianity has provided a sense of community beyond kinship boundaries for those accepting the standards of the 'group apart', but has in the process consciously contributed to the

(3) Xilunru, with the same stem -lunru as in mulunru ("white man"), a designation for "all that belongs to the white man's world".

(4) See Introduction, p. 1.

(5) Note that, in using the term "Protestant" here, I do not oppose this section of Christianity to the Roman Catholic Church, but it is necessary thus to specify the findings, as my material comes entirely from within the Protestant community among the Tshwa.

disruption of the traditional social structure.

6. Social ethics, regularizing mutual rights and obligations within a given group, have been strongly influenced and partly replaced by individualized, religiously conditioned ethical concepts;

7. Protestant faith has changed traditional attitudes towards death by emphasis on 'eternal life'.

1. An intellectual faith

We have seen that, among the Tshwa as among many other African peoples, "schools became the nurseries of Christian congregations". (6) Even today, many Tshwa make no clear distinction between xikholwa (faith) and xikola (school). These two entities appear to be jointly seen as the cultural aspect of xilungu. For the Tshwa, these two hold, in fact, the key to the larger material advantages of civilisation. Baptism is, at least partly, seen as a 'rite de passage' into the modern world, in which education plays a superior role.

For those to be baptised, the intellectual preparation - learning by heart certain statements formulating the basic Protestant Christian faith - stands out as the most important. Christianity is a belief to be learned. It has also been pointed out that Protestant worship depends much more on an intellectual understanding of the message brought through Bible reading and sermon, than on any symbolic experience of the divine presence. (7)

All doctrines are thus absorbed by the mind, to be known, and repeated on request. But they appear not, in general, to have penetrated deeply into Tshwa cos-

(6) J. Mbiti, African religions and philosophy, p. 232.
Cf. p. 65 of this dissertation.

(7) See further pp. 156-157.

mology and spiritual concepts. Purely ethical teaching, on the other hand, is accepted as "the Law of Christ". But not even the Protestant ethic has the all-inclusive view consistent with Tshwa traditional life. (See below, section 6).

In a cultural setting, where life was seen as a complete whole, sought mainly through one process centered around the diviner, Protestantism thus planted the seed of division. Life was divided into compartments which may be satisfied through different channels. (8) Worship, thus, became purely religious, lifted out of its pragmatic applications, so well-known in traditional worship.

My material leads me, then, to conclude that Protestantism, at least in the doctrinal aspect, has in many cases become a superstructure on top of an important layer of traditional substance. This is undoubtedly causing perpetual inner conflict in many a Protestant Tshwa.

2. A large sector of Tshwa traditional beliefs untouched

In principle, all Tshwa spiritual beliefs were declared out-of-bounds by the Protestant Church. One of them - the mandiki-complex - (9) was, however, identified with demons as found in the New Testament and attacked by spiritual methods. (10) Ancestral spirits as well as spirits-of-revenge (11) and witches were all dismissed as irrational. There is clear evidence that beliefs in these spiritual elements are to this day largely untouched by Christian influence,

(8) Cf. pp. 106 and 159.

(9) About mandiki, see p. 42 ff.

(10) See p. 197 for Christian 'treatment'.

(11) See further pp. 195-196.

and persist strongly below the Protestant superstructure.

3. Rites of life crises not part of Protestant worship

The communal rites - or 'rites of the soil' - were observed by the neighbourhood, a territorial group, without respect to kin membership. ⁽¹²⁾ They are still considered necessary "for the life of the country", and chiefs are bound to perform such rites. ⁽¹³⁾

For the health and 'life' of the individual Tshwa person and his kin-group, however, the imperative rites were the ones performed by his own lineage group: kinship rituals. The kin-group's 'rites of life crises' made afflictions somehow manageable through well structured channels. Christians were advised to seek hospital treatment in all types of sickness, and prayers were encouraged to accompany such treatment. In spite of this, Protestantism has not yet offered the Tshwa a truly spiritual method of dealing with afflictions. It partakes in the 'Western' rationalization of sickness, while the Tshwa mind still reaches for its cause in a mystical sphere. ⁽¹⁴⁾

Certain observations should be made in this context:

(a) As traditional spiritual elements are not "acceptable" within the Protestant community, Christians usually adopt the 'official' attitude in public, while maintaining such spirits as integral parts of their personal world-view. This seems to be another instance of the intellectual Protestant superstructure

-
- (12) About communal rites, see pp. 122 ff.
(13) Chiefs' duties are described on p. 10.
(14) See pp. 203-205.

on top of persisting traditional beliefs.

(b) The communal rites did not usually place any heavy burden on any individual, except the chiefs, as far as contributions are concerned. Particularly in the case of calendaric agricultural rites, contributions were nominal, as they did not require any sacrificial animal. ⁽¹⁵⁾ It seems likely that this understanding of the "cost" of worship has also been taken over by the Protestant community. ⁽¹⁶⁾

(c) No diviner had anything to do with the calendaric communal rites. In all kinship rituals, on the other hand, the diviner was the centre of activity. Nothing was done without his advice or instruction.

The finding that Protestant worship has replaced communal rites but not kinship rituals therefore leads to the explanation that the realm of the diviner has not been penetrated by the Protestant faith. The divinatory process evidently answers to a deeply felt need among Tshwa, particularly by providing the supernatural causes of affliction which Tshwa people demand to know.

Not surprisingly, there is a seemingly irreconcilable opposition between the traditional diviners/medical practitioners (tin'ang) and representatives of the Protestant faith. ⁽¹⁷⁾

(d) As traditional communal rituals are performed by the chief, the Protestant "taking over" of these rites is undoubtedly one cause of a usually latent, but still perceptible conflict between the institution of traditional chieftainship and Protestantism. This does not preclude certain incumbents from taking a positive attitude. ⁽¹⁸⁾

(15) See p. 124.

(16) See further pp. 153-155.

(17) Cf. pp. 201-2 and 204.

(18) About this conflict, see p. 10.

(e) The own kinship rituals are closer to the heart of the Tshwa than communal rites. The own ancestral spirits (tinguluve) play a more direct role as channels of 'life', and as integral parts of the process of 'vital participation' ⁽¹⁹⁾, so essential for the well-being of a Tshwa persons in the traditional context. This is probably why kinship rites reportedly continue as frequently as before.

The recent introduction of timisa ⁽²⁰⁾ into the Protestant sphere give a clear indication of the importance of the departed kinsmen. Even allowing for certain syncretistic tendencies, timisa must be seen as an effort to translate a deeply felt traditional value into Christian terms. However this may be considered by the Protestant Churches at present, it should be a memento as to the potential theological importance of ancestral spirits.

4. A legalistic trend readily accepted

It has been discussed in some detail whether the observed legalistic conception of the Christian faith is the fruit of a specific presentation of the Gospel to the Tshwa, or the natural consequence of the Christian message received within the Tshwa ethical frame of mind. ⁽²¹⁾ Most probably, both these factors have interacted in creating the existing legalism within Tshwa Protestantism, and a strong emphasis on ethics.

However, ethics have simultaneously been to a large extent changed from strictly social (as in the traditional society) to religious. (See below, section 6).

(19) See p. 106.

(20) Timisa (adapted from the Portuguese "missa" = mass) are memorial services. See further p. 142.

(21) See discussion on pp. 222-224.

5. A sense of community, but disruption of traditional structures

As the Tshwa social structure was inextricably interwoven with all traditional beliefs and customs, it was rejected by the Protestant missions. Tshwa individuals were called to break with family and kin in order to become Christians. It was declared ethically 'good' to make this break as complete as possible.

For those who entered the Protestant 'group apart', a sense of community (wuhlangeli) (22) developed, based partly upon jointly accepted standards, partly on the necessity of separated individuals finding a new solidarity. This wuhlangeli has later become a cherished Tshwa Christian value, extending the sense of community far beyond kinship limitations.

Naturally, these developments within Protestantism have strongly contributed to a disruption of the unity within the kinship structure. We now find Tshwa Protestants largely accepting the traditional social structure when applying strictly social criteria, but rejecting its religious demands. Obviously, this leads to constant tension in both Christian and non-Christian sectors of the community.

Some customs connected with the social structure, as, e.g. nghowolo (bridewealth), are in a process of continuous change, partly stimulated by the Protestant Churches. As a traditionally legalistic society now finds itself without strict norms in this important respect, the present development indicates less stable attitudes towards the marriage connection. (23)

(22) See especially pp. 94-97.

(23) Cf. pp. 18-19.

6. Individualized, religious ethics versus social ethics

As the ideal of 'vital participation' (24) included 'right relationships' between living and dead, as well as between the various living kin members, social ethics were one foundation of 'life' (wutomi). (25) Human relationships were an immediate threat to the well-being of the group and its individual members.

The Protestant Churches among the Tshwa introduced an ethic primarily based upon a 'right relationship' between individual and God. Naturally, this Christian ethic had certain social implications. But, in the conflict between traditional social loyalties, rejected when religious criteria are used (See above), and the idea of 'right relationships' with God, the Tshwa Protestant seems to opt for the latter. We also find that social ethical values are considered as valid primarily in connections within the 'group apart'.

Individual ethical responsibility is fostered within the Protestant community. The traditional fear of the group being afflicted because of an individual's sin is therefore removed. The most immediate consequence appears to be a tendency to conceal ethical shortcomings, making them "matters between God and the individual", rather than between the individual and the social group of which he is a member. (26)

7. Remarkable changes of attitudes towards death

We have found that the sphere of death has undergone the most decisive changes of all traditional

(24) See pp. 106-107.

(25) About 'social sin', see p. 167 and pp. 226-228.

(26) Cf. p. 233.

customs and beliefs. (27) As such changed attitudes are displayed in an emotionally tense atmosphere, they are bound to make a strong impression on all involved.

We assume that there is an important connection between such change of attitudes and the Christian promise of 'eternal life', as the departed Christian had to be prepared for this continuing life in a completely different manner from the dead who were expected to continue as ancestral spirits (linguluwa).

Returning now to the questions in the beginning of this chapter, we find, therefore, that, with the important exception referred to under (7), Protestant Christianity has added to - and in several instances modified - Tshwa traditional concepts and customs, rather than displaced the same. Several conflicts introduced partly by xilungu. (28) partly by the Protestant faith, are still rampant. Many Protestants, therefore, find themselves in a social and cultural uncertainty. Furthermore, several elements within the traditional context are now clamouring for a more positive treatment than has been accorded them by the Protestant Churches.

Within the ongoing process of acculturation, many felt needs among the Tshwa have not yet been met in the Protestant context. The most acute of these may be the need of coming to terms with the traditional world of spirits, which remains an integral part of the Tshwa frame of reference.

On the other hand, it should not be forgotten that Protestant Christianity assists the Tshwa in finding a religious perspective on the outside influence,

(27) See, e.g., pp. 256-257.

(28) See note on page 270

which is pressing them from all sides. It help them to find a community stretching wider than their old one. Furthermore, certain features within the Protestant community (e.g. using the Tshwa language in worship, and depending in an increasing degree on African leadership) help Tshwa to find a new identity which, on the social side, may fit in with "modern living". Finally, the strong attachment one finds to the Protestant Churches among many Tshwa, in spite of observed discrepancies, is most certainly based upon a greater religious satisfaction, focussed on the religious "summum bonum" of 'eternal life'.

It is hoped, however, that the Tshwa Protestant community will in the future face more constructively than before certain issues that arise from present conflicts and mutual misunderstandings. Some of these urgent issues are within the following fields:

- a) Conflict of cultural factors in sphere of "sin and salvation";
- b) Spiritual and social sickness causation;
- c) Theological and practical implications of spirit beliefs, particularly ancestral spirits (tinguluve);
- d) Disrupted social structures and customs;
- e) Symbolism and drama in worship.

B I B L I O G R A P H Y

- ADEGBOLA, E.A.A., The "Theological basis of ethics", in Dickson, K, and Ellingworth, P.(ed), Biblical revelation and African beliefs, pp. 116-136.
- ANDERSSON, Efraim, Churches at the grass-roots, a study in Congo-Brazzaville. Lutterworth, London 1968.
- ASAMOA, E.A., "The Christian Church and African heritage" in R.Desai (ed), Christianity in Africa as seen by the Africans", pp. 124-135.
- ATLAS DE MOÇAMBIQUE, Lourenço Marques 1960.
- BANTON, R., "The restructuring of social relationships" in Southall, A. (ed), Social change in modern Africa, pp. 113-125.
- BASOON, W.R. and HERSHKOVITZ, M.J.(ed), Continuity and change in African cultures, Univ. of Chicago Press, Chicago, Ill., 1959.
- BEATTIE, J. and MIDDLETON, J. (ed), Spirit mediumship and society in Africa, Routledge and Kegan Paul, London 1969.
- DELMANNAN, P., "The impact of money on an African subsistence economy" in Readings in Anthropology, ed. by Jennings, J.D. and Hoebel, E.A., pp.389-395.
- BOOK OF DISCIPLINE OF THE UNITED METHODIST CHURCH, 1968, Nashville, Tenn.
- BUILOCK, The Mashona, Juta, Cape Town 1928.
- COLE, D.T., "Doke's classification of Bantu languages", in African Studies, Vol. 18, pp. 197-213.
- COLSON, E., The Plateau Tonga of N.Rhodesia, Manchester Univ. Press, Manchester 1962.
- DESAI, Ram, Christianity in Africa as seen by the Africans, Swallow, Denver, Col. 1962.
- DICKSON, K. and ELLINGWORTH, P.(ed), Biblical revelation and African beliefs, Lutterworth, London 1969.

- DUBB, A.A., The role of the Church in an urban African society. M.A. dissertation, Rhodes University, Grahamstown 1961.
- EARTHY, E.D., Valentia women. OUP, London 1933.
- KISHIMU, W.W. and SCHAPER, I., "Religious beliefs and practices" in Schaper, I. (ed), Bantu-speaking tribes of South Africa, pp. 247-270.
- EVANS-PRITCHARD, E.E., Nuer religion. OUP, London 1956.
- FIELD, M.J., Search for security, an ethno-psychiatric study of rural Ghana. Faber & Faber, London 1960.
- FORDE, D. (ed), African worlds. OUP, London 1954.
- FORTES, M., "Some reflections on ancestor worship in Africa", in Fortes, M. & Dieterlen, G. (ed), African systems of thought, pp. 122-144.
- FORTES, M., and DIETERLEN, G. (ed), African systems of thought. OUP, London 1965.
- FULLER, C.E., "Ethnohistory in the study of culture change in Southeast Africa", in Bascom, W.R. & Herskovits, M.J. (ed), Continuity and change in African cultures, pp. 113-129.
- GILFAND, M., Shona religion, Juta, Cape Town 1962.
- GIMBERG, D.W., "Venda names for God", in The Bible Translator, vol. 31, NO.4, Oct. 1970, pp. 180-185.
- GLUCKMAN, M., "Analysis of a social situation in modern Zululand" as quoted in Rita-Ferreira, A., O movimento migratório de trabalhadores entre Moçambique e África do Sul, p. 11.
- GONÇALVES, J.J., Protestantismo em África, contribuição para o estudo do protestantismo na África Portuguesa. Junta de Investigações do Ultramar, Lisboa 1960. 2 vol.
- HAYS, H.R., From ape to angel. Methuen, London 1958.
- HOEDEL, E.A., Man in the primitive world, 2nd ed, McGraw-Hill, New York 1958.

- HOERNLE, W., "Social organisation", in Schapera, I., (ed), Santu-speaking tribes of South Africa, pp.67-94.
- HOGUE, W.T., G. Harry Arnow, a pioneer missionary. Free Methodist Publ. House, Chicago 1901.
- HUNTER, R., Reaction to conquest, 2nd ed., OUP, London 1961.
- IDOWU, E.B., "God", in Dickson, K. & Ellingworth, P.(ed), Biblical revelation and African beliefs, pp. 17-29.
- INTERPRETER'S BIBLE. The, Abin-don-Cokesbury, New York 1951, 12 vol.
- JAMES, W., Varieties of the religious experience. The Modern Library, New York 1936.
- JEFFREYS, M.D.W., "O lobolo é o preço da criança" in Sociedade de Estudos da Prov. de Moçambique, XXXI, NO. 132, Jul-Set. 1962.
- JUNOD, H.A., The life of a South African tribe, 2 vol. University Books, New York 1962.
- KRIGE, J.D. & KRIGE, S.J., "The Lovedu of the Transvaal" in Ford, D. (ed), African worlds, pp. 55-82.
- The realm of a rain-queen. OUP, London 1943.
- KUPER, H., An African aristocracy. OUP, London 1947.
- LEE, S.G., "Spirit possession among the Zulu", in Beattie, J. & Middleton, J.(ed), Spirit mediumship and society in Africa.
- LENGA, W.A. and VOGT, E.E., (ed), Reader in comparative religion, an anthropological approach. Row-Peterson, Evanston, Ill. 1958.
- LEVINE, R., "Witchcraft and sorcery in a Gushi community", in Middleton, J. & Winter, E.H.(ed), Witchcraft and sorcery in East Africa, pp. 187-220.
- LIENHARDT, G., Divinity and experience. Clarendon Press, Oxford 1961.

- LLOYD, P.C., Africa in social change.
Penguin, Baltimore 1967.
- MACLEAN, C.M.U., "Hospitals or healers?" in Human Organisation, Vol. 25:2, 1966,
pp. 131-139.
- MAIR, L., "Sickness behaviour among the Yoruba", in Witchcraft and healing.
Witchcraft. World University
Library, Mc-Graw-Hill, New York
1969.
- MALINOWSKI, B., "Introductory essay: The anthro-
pology of changing African cul-
tures", in International African
Institute: Methods of study of
culture contact in Africa.
OUP, London 1938.
- MAHWICK, B.A., The Swazi. Cass, London 1940.
- MAYER: P., Townsmen or tribesmen.
OUP, Cape Town 1961.
- MBANZE, N.J., A ucamo wa Mutshwa ("The Tshwa
family"). Central Mission Press,
Cleveland, Tvl, no date.
- MBITI, J., African religions and philosophy.
Heinemann, London 1969.
- "Eschatology", in Dickson, K. &
Killingworth, P. (ed), Biblical
revelation and African beliefs.
pp. 159-184.
- MIDDLETON, J. and
WINTON, K.H., (ed), Witchcraft and sorcery in East
Africa. Routledge and Kegan Paul,
London 1963.
- MITCHELL, J.G., "The meaning of misfortune for
urban Africans", in Fortes, M.
& Diesterlen, G. (ed), African sys-
tems of thought, pp. 192-203.
- MOGAMBIQUE, Curso de Extensão Universitária,
Ano lectivo de 1964-65. Institu-
to Superior de Ciências Sociais
& Política Ultramarina.
Lisboa 1965.
- MUCAMBE, E.H., Landikezeni (a Tshwa novel).
Central Mission Press, Cleveland,
Tvl. No date.
- A Matimu ya Vutshwa ("The histo-
ry of the Tshwa"). Central Mis-
sion Press, Cleveland, Tvl. 1948.

- MUCOMBO, A., A mulaveteli wa ntumbuluko wa Vatshwa ("The seeker for the origins of the Tshwa"). Central Mission Press, Cleveland, Tvl. 5th ed., 1954.
- Nkutsulani wa matimu ya Vatshwa ("The remainder of Tshwa history"). Central Mission Press, Cleveland, Tvl. 3rd ed., 1955.
- MULAGO, V., "Vital participation", in Dickson, K. & Ellingworth, P. (ed), Biblical revelation and African belief, pp. 137-158.
- OMER-COOPER, J.D., The Zulu aftermath. Ibadan history series, Longmans, London 1966.
- PAIVA E PONA, A.P. de, Dos primeiros trabalhos dos Portugueses no Monomotapa. Lisboa 1892.
- PARRINDER, G., Religion in Africa. Penguin 1969.
- Religion in an African city. OUP, London 1953.
- PAUW, B.A., Religion in a Tswana chiefdom. OUP, London 1960.
- PERSSON, J.A., Bhuku ya Ranya (a Tshwa Primer), Central Mission Press, Cleveland, Tvl. First published 1916.
- Vardagsliv och högtidsstunder i Inhambane. Nya Bokforlags AB, Stockholm 1933.
- SAIDCLIFFE-BROWN, A.R., Structure and function in primitive society. Cohen & West, London 1952.
- , and
 FORDE, D., (ed), African systems of kinship and marriage. OUP, London 1950.
- RASMUSSEN: "An Eskimo shaman purifies a sick person", in Lessa, W.A. & Vogt, E.Z. (ed), A Reader in comparative religion, pp. 410-414.
- RELATÓRIO OFICIAL DA CONFERÊNCIA ANUAL DA IGREJA METODISTA NO SUDESTE DE AFRICA, 1967. Central Mission Press, Cleveland, Tvl. 1967.
- RITA-FERREIRA, A., O movimento migratório de trabalhadores entre Moçambique e África do Sul. Estudos de Ciências políticas e sociais, NO 39. Lisboa 1963.

- SAWYERR, H., "Sacrifice", in Dickson, K. & Ellingworth, P. (ed), Biblical revelation and African beliefs, pp. 57-82.
- SCHAPER, I., Bantu-speaking tribes of South Africa, New Miller, Cape Town 1937.
- "Law and justice", in Bantu-speaking tribes of South Africa, pp. 197-220.
- SILVA, A. da, "Ocupação missionária de Moçambique", in "Moçambique", pp. 675-694.
- SILVA REGO, A. da, Alguns problemas sociológico-missionários da África negra. Junta de investigações do Ultramar, Lisboa 1960.
- SMITH, E., (ed), African ideas of God. Edinburgh House Press, London 1950.
- SOUTHALL, A., (ed), Social change in modern Africa. OUP, London 1961.
- SUNDKLER, D.G.M., Bantu prophets in South Africa. 2nd ed., OUP, London 1961.
- The Christian ministry in Africa. SCM Press, London 1962.
- TAYLOR, J., The primal vision. SCM Press, London 1963.
- Processes of growth in an African church. SCM Press, London 1958.
- TEMPELS, P., Bantu Philosophy. Presence africaine, Paris 1959.
- TISIMU TA IVANGELI (The Tshwa hymnal of the Methodist Episcopal Church).
- TURNER, V.W., The drums of affliction: a study of religious processes among the Ndembu of Zambia. Clarendon Press, Oxford 1968.
- VILAKAZI, A., Zulu transformations. Ph.D. thesis, Univ. of Natal, Pietermaritzburg 1962.
- WELBOURN, F.B., East African Christian. Students' Library, OUP, London 1965.
- "Healing as a psychosomatic event", in Witchcraft and healing.

- WILLIAMSON, S.G., Akan religion and the Christian faith. Ghana Universities Press, Accra 1965.
- WILSON, M., Communal rituals of the Nyakyusa. OUP, London 1959.
- WITCHCRAFT AND HEALING. Edinburgh University, Centre of African studies: proceedings of a seminar 14-15/2 1969.

Author Helgesson A

Name of thesis The Tshwa response to Christianity 1971

PUBLISHER:

University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg

©2013

LEGAL NOTICES:

Copyright Notice: All materials on the University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg Library website are protected by South African copyright law and may not be distributed, transmitted, displayed, or otherwise published in any format, without the prior written permission of the copyright owner.

Disclaimer and Terms of Use: Provided that you maintain all copyright and other notices contained therein, you may download material (one machine readable copy and one print copy per page) for your personal and/or educational non-commercial use only.

The University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg, is not responsible for any errors or omissions and excludes any and all liability for any errors in or omissions from the information on the Library website.